

Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw
Color Multifunction Printer
User's Guide

Regulatory Model: Dell C1765nf / Dell C1765nfw



Contents

Before Beginning	15
A Notes, Cautions, and Warnings	17
1 Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer User's Guide	19
Conventions.	19
2 Finding Information	21
3 Product Features	23
4 About the Printer	25
Front View	25
Rear View.	26
Space Requirements	27
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	28
Operator Panel	28
Securing the Printer	29
Ordering Supplies	30
Printer Setup	31
5 Removing Packaging Material	33
6 Connecting Your Printer	35
Connecting Printer to Computer or Network	36

Direct Connection	36
Ethernet Connection	36
Wireless Connection (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer Only)	37
Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting	42
Connecting the Telephone Line	43
Turning On the Printer	44
7 Setting Up Your Printer	47
Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel	47
Printer Setup Using the Software and Documentation Disc	51
8 Setting the IP Address	53
Assigning an IP Address	53
The Operator Panel	53
The Tool Box	54
Verifying the IP Settings	55
The Operator Panel	55
The System Settings Report	55
The Ping Command	55
9 Loading Paper	57
Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	57
Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	62
10 Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Windows®	65
Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status	65
Changing the firewall settings before installing your printer	65
Direct Connection Setup	65
For installing host-based printer driver	65
For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver	66
Network Connection Setup	68
Network Printer Setup on a Local Network	68
Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network	72

Setting Up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)	76
Adding Roles of Print Services	76
WSD Printer Setup	77
Setting Up for Shared Printing	78
Point and Print.	80
Peer-to-Peer.	82
11 Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Macintosh	85
Installing the Drivers and Software	85
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5 or Later Version(s).	85
Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11	86
Using Your Printer	89
12 Operator Panel	91
Using the Operator Panel Buttons	91
Status of Wi-Fi WPS Button Backlight (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)	93
Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters	94
Keypad Letters and Numbers	94
Changing Numbers or Names.	94
Inserting a Pause	94
Printing a Panel Settings Page.	95
Changing the Language	95
The Operator Panel	95
The Tool Box.	95
Setting the Power Saving Timer Option	95
13 Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool	97
Overview	97
Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.	97
Setting Up From Web Browser	97
Setting Up From Operator Panel	99
Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool	99

Overview of the Menu Items	99
Page Display Format	101
Top Frame	101
Left Frame	102
Right Frame	103
Changing the Settings of the Menu Items	104
Details of the Menu Items	104
Printer Status	106
Printer Jobs	107
Printer Settings	108
Print Server Settings	122
Print Volume	133
Address Book	133
Tray Settings	138
14 Understanding the Tool Box Menus	139
Starting the Tool Box	139
Using the Tool Box to Change the Printer Settings	139
Printer Settings Report	140
Printer Information	140
Menu Settings	140
Reports	142
TCP/IP Settings	143
Tray Settings	143
Defaults Settings	144
Fax Settings	145
Printer Maintenance	146
System Settings	146
Date & Time	148
Paper Density	148
Adjust Transfer Roller	149
Adjust Fusing Unit	149
Registration Adjustment	150
Adjust Altitude	151
Reset Defaults	151
Non-Dell Toner	151
Transfer Roller Refresh Mode	152
Web Link Customization	152
TCP/IP Settings	152
Tray Settings	153

EWS (Embedded Web Server or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool)	154
Scan Defaults	154
Fax Defaults	156
Copy Defaults	157
Fax Settings	159
Diagnosis	161
Chart Print	161
Environment Sensor Info	161
Clean Developer	161
Refresh Mode	161
Resetting Defaults	162
15 Understanding the Printer Menus	163
Defaults Settings	163
Copy Defaults	163
Scan Defaults	168
Fax Defaults	172
Print from USB Defaults	173
Tray Settings	173
MPF	173
Report / List	174
System Settings	174
Panel Settings	174
Job History	175
Error History	175
Color Test Page	175
Protocol Monitor	175
Address Book	175
Fax Activity	175
Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel	175
Printing a Report/List Using the Tool Box	175
Admin Menu	176
Phone Book	176
Network	176
Fax Settings	181
System Settings	188
Maintenance	192
Secure Settings	197
Scan to E-Mail	198
USB Settings	199

Panel Language	199
Panel Lock Function	200
Enabling the Panel Lock	200
Disabling the Panel Lock	200
Resetting Defaults	201
16 Print Media Guidelines	203
Paper	203
Paper Characteristics	203
Recommended Paper	204
Unacceptable Paper	204
Selecting Paper	204
Selecting Preprinted Media and Letterhead	205
Printing on Letterhead	205
Loading Letterhead	205
Selecting Pre-Punched Paper	206
Envelopes	206
Labels	207
Storing Print Media	207
Identifying Print Media and Specifications	208
Supported Paper Sizes	208
Supported Paper Types	209
Paper Type Specifications	209
17 Loading Print Media	211
Capacity	211
Print Media Dimensions	211
Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	211
Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	216
Loading Letterhead	218
Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	219
Loading an Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	221
Loading Letterhead	223
Loading Print Media When Manual Duplex Printing	224
When Using the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	224
When Using the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)	225

Using the Output Tray Extension	226
---	-----

Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing 227

18 Printing 229

Tips for Successful Printing 229

Tips on Storing Print Media 229

Avoiding Paper Jams 229

Sending a Job to Print 229

Canceling a Print Job. 230

Canceling From the Operator Panel. 230

Canceling a Job From the Computer Running Windows 230

Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device 231

Supported File Formats 231

Printing a File in a USB Memory 231

Printing a Report Page 231

19 Copying 233

Loading Paper for Copying 233

Preparing a Document 233

Making Copies From the Document Glass. 233

Making Copies From the ADF 235

Setting Copy Options 235

Number of Copies 235

Color. 236

Collated 236

Reduce/Enlarge 237

Document Size. 238

Original Type. 238

Lighter/Darker 239

Sharpness 239

Auto Exposure 240

Multiple-Up 240

Margin Top/Bottom 241

Margin Left/Right 241

Margin Middle. 242

Changing the Default Settings	243
20 Scanning	245
Scanning Overview	245
Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application	246
Scanning from the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD	247
Printer Setup for Scan to WSD	247
Procedures for WSD Scan.	247
Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver	247
Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver	248
Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP	249
Overview	249
Confirming a Login name and Password	251
Specifying a Destination to Store the Document	252
Configuring the Printer Settings	259
Sending the Scanned File on the Network	263
Scanning to USB Storage Device	264
Sending an E-Mail with the Scanned Image	265
Setting an E-Mail Address Book	265
Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned File	266
21 Faxing	267
Configuring Fax Initial Settings	267
Setting Your Country	267
Setting the Printer ID	267
Setting the Time and Date	268
Changing the Clock Mode	268
Setting Sounds	268
Speaker Volume	268
Ringer Volume	269
Specifying the Fax Settings	269
Changing the Fax Settings Options	269
Available Fax Settings Options	270
Sending a Fax	272
Loading an Original Document on the ADF	272
Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass	272

Resolution	273
Original Type.	273
Lighter/Darker	274
Sending a Fax Automatically	274
Sending a Fax Manually.	275
Confirming Transmissions.	275
Automatic Redialing.	275
Sending a Delayed Fax	276
Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)	276
Example	276
Receiving a Fax.	280
About Receiving Modes.	280
Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes	280
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode	280
Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode	280
Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone/Fax or Ans Machine/Fax Mode	280
Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone	280
Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode	281
Receiving Faxes in the Memory.	281
Polling Receive	281
Automatic Dialing	282
Speed Dialing	282
Storing a Number for Speed Dialing	282
Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial	282
Group Dialing	283
Setting Group Dial	283
Editing Group Dial	283
Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)	284
Printing an Address Book List.	284
Other Ways to Fax	285
Using the Secure Receiving Mode	285
Using an Answering Machine.	286
Using a Computer Modem.	286
Printing a Report	287
Changing Fax Defaults	287

Know Your Printer. 289

22 Understanding Your Printer Software (Windows® Only) 291

- Printer Status Window. 291
- Status Monitor Console 291
- Dell Supplies Management System 291
- Quick Launch Utility 292
- Address Book Editor 293
- ScanButton Manager 293
- Dell ScanCenter 294

23 Understanding Printer Messages 295

24 Specifications. 301

- Operating System Compatibility 301**
- Power Supply 301**
- Dimensions 301**
- Memory 301**
- Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface . 301**
- MIB Compatibility. 302**
- Environment. 302**
- Cables 303**
- Copy Specifications. 304**
- Scanner Specifications. 304**
- Facsimile Specifications 305**

Maintaining Your Printer 307

25 Maintaining Your Printer 309

- Determining the Status of Supplies 309**
- Conserving Supplies 309**

Storing Print Media	309
Storing Consumables	310
Replacing Toner Cartridges	310
Removing the Toner Cartridges	310
Installing a Toner Cartridge	312
Cleaning Inside the Printer	313
Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor	316
Adjusting Color Registration	317
Performing Auto Adjust	317
Printing the Color Registration Chart	318
Determining Values	318
Entering Values	319
Cleaning the Scanner	320
Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller	322
26 Clearing Jams	323
Avoiding Jams	323
Identifying the Location of Paper Jams	324
Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF	325
Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer	329
Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer	330
Clearing Paper Jams From the Output Tray	332
Troubleshooting	337
27 Troubleshooting	339
Basic Printer Problems	339
Display Problems	339
Printing Problems	339
Print Quality Problems	341
The output is too light	341
Toner smears or print comes off/Stain on back side	342

Random spots/Blurred images	343
The entire output is blank	343
Streaks appear on the output	343
Pitched color dots	344
Vertical blanks	344
Mottle	344
Ghosting	345
Fog	346
Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)	346
Auger mark.	347
Wrinkled/Stained paper	347
The top margins is incorrect.	348
Color registration is out of alignment	349
Protrudent / Bumpy paper	350
Jam	350
Misfeed jam	350
Multi-feed jam	351
Copy Problem	352
Fax Problems	352
Scanning Problems	353
Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems	355
Wireless Problems (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)	356
Other Problems	356
Contacting Service	356

Appendix	357
--------------------	-----

B Appendix	359
Dell Technical Support Policy	359
Online Services	359
Warranty and Return Policy	360
Recycling Information	360
Contacting Dell	360
New Zealand PTC200 Warnings	361
General warning	361

2.11.1 Compliance testing (6) & (7) (Functional tests)	361
4.5.1 Off-hook line impedance	361
4.9.3 Non-voice equipment	361
5.6.1 General requirements (automatic dialling devices)	361
5.5.5 User instructions.	361
8.1.7 User Instructions (automatic call set-up)	361
8.2.1(b) Call answering	361
USA/Canada Wi-Fi Warnings	362
FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION INTERFERENCE STATEMENT	362
Labeling requirements	362
RF exposure warning	362
Canada, Industry Canada (IC) Notices	362
Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure Information	363
Canada, avis d'Industry Canada (IC)	363
Informations concernant l'exposition aux fréquences radio (RF)	363
Canada IC statement	363
 Index	 365

Before Beginning

- Notes, Cautions, and Warnings 17
- 1 Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer User's Guide 19
- 2 Finding Information 21
- 3 Product Features 23
- 4 About the Printer 25

Notes, Cautions, and Warnings



NOTE: A NOTE indicates important information that helps you make better use of your printer.



CAUTION: A CAUTION indicates either potential damage to hardware or loss of data and tells you how to avoid the problem.



WARNING: A WARNING indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice.

© 2012 Dell Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction of these materials in any manner whatsoever without the written permission of Dell Inc. is strictly forbidden.

Trademarks used in this text: *Dell* and the *DELL* logo are trademarks of Dell Inc.; *Microsoft*, *Windows*, *Windows Server*, *Windows Vista*, and *Internet Explorer* are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries; *Macintosh* and *Mac OS* are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries; *Adobe* is either a registered trademark or a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries; *Wi-Fi* is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance; *Wi-Fi Protected Setup*, *WPA*, and *WPA2* are trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

XML Paper Specification (XPS): This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at <http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369>; *DES*: This product includes software developed by Eric Young (eay@mincom.oz.au); *AES*: Copyright © 2003, Dr Brian Gladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved. This product uses published AES software provided by Dr Brian Gladman under BSD licensing terms; *TIFF (libtiff)*: Copyright © 1988-1997 Sam Leffler and Copyright © 1991-1997 Silicon Graphics, Inc.; *ICC Profile (Little cms)*: Copyright © 1998-2004 Marti Maria.

Other trademarks and trade names may be used in this document to refer to either the entities claiming the marks and names or their products. Dell Inc. disclaims any proprietary interest in trademarks and trade names other than its own.

Our printer software uses some of the codes defined by the Independent JPEG Group.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS

This software and documentation are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and in applicable FAR provisions: Dell Inc., One Dell Way, Round Rock, Texas, 78682, USA.

November 2012 Rev. A00

Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer User's Guide

Click the links to the left for information on the features, options, and operation of your Dell C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer. For information on other documentation included with your Dell C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer, see "Finding Information" on page 21.

 **NOTE:** In this manual, Dell C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer is referred to as the "printer."

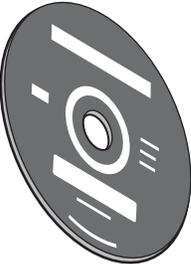
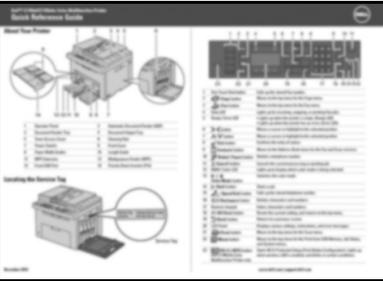
Conventions

The following describe the meaning of the symbols and fonts used in this manual:

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| Bold texts | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Names of hardware button on the operator panel. • Screen names on the LCD panel. • Menus, commands, windows, or dialog boxes displayed on the computer screen. |
| Texts in <code>Courier New</code> font | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Menus and messages displayed on the LCD panel. • Characters entered from the computer. • Directory paths. |
| < > | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Key on the keyboard of the computer. |
| → | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indicates a path to a certain item within a procedure on a computer. |
| " " | : | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cross references in this manual. • Characters entered from the operator panel. • Messages displayed on the computer screen. |

Finding Information

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drivers for my printer • My <i>User's Guide</i> 	<p><i>Software and Documentation</i> disc</p> <div>  </div> <p>The <i>Software and Documentation</i> disc contains setup video, documentation, and drivers for your printer. You can use the disc to install/re-install drivers or access your setup video and documentation.</p> <p>Readme files may be included on your disc to provide last-minute updates about technical changes to your printer or advanced technical reference material for experienced users or technicians.</p>
How to use my printer	<p><i>Quick Reference Guide</i></p> <div>  </div>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Safety information • Warranty information 	<p><i>Important Information</i></p> <div>  </div> <p>WARNING: Read and follow all safety instructions in the <i>Important Information</i> prior to setting up and operating your printer.</p>

What are you looking for?

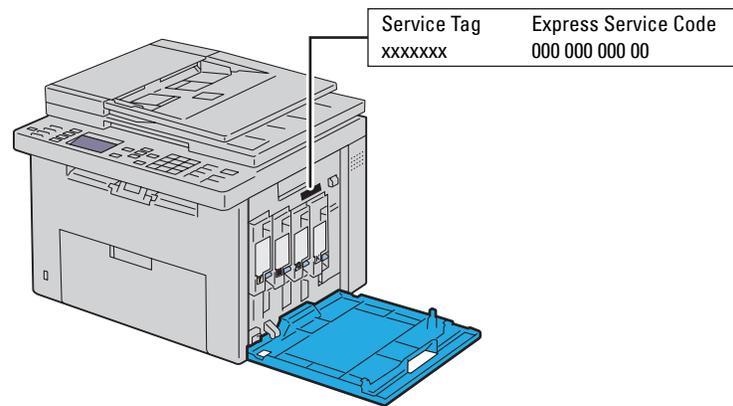
How to set up my printer

Find it here*Setup diagram*

Troubleshooting

"Troubleshooting" on page 339

Express Service Code and Service Tag



The Express Service Code and Service Tag are located inside the side door of your printer.

-
- Latest drivers for my printer
 - Answers to technical service and support questions
 - Documentation for my printer

Go to support.dell.com

support.dell.com provides several online tools, including:

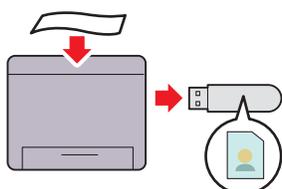
- Solutions — Troubleshooting hints and tips, articles from technicians, and online courses
- Upgrades — Upgrade information for components, such as printer driver
- Customer Care — Contact information, order status, warranty, and repair information
- Downloads — Drivers
- Manuals — Printer documentation and product specifications

Go to support.dell.com. Select your region and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

Product Features

This chapter describes the product features and indicates their links.

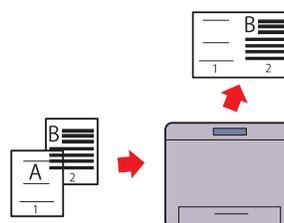
Scanning to a USB Storage Device



With Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer, you don't need a PC to connect your USB storage device to save the scanned data. Insert your USB storage device in the port on the printer, and save the scanned data directly to your USB storage device.

For more information, see "Scanning to USB Storage Device" on page 264.

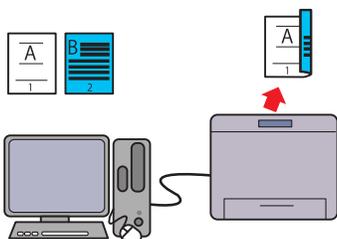
Printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper (Multiple-Up)



Multiple-Up Print allows you to print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see "Multiple-Up" on page 240.

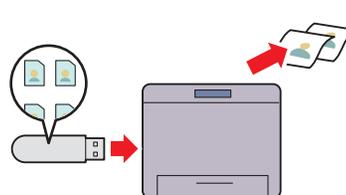
2-Sided Printing (Manual Duplex Print)



Manual Duplex Print is to print two or more pages on the front and back side of a single sheet of paper manually. This feature allows you to reduce the paper consumption.

For more information, see "Loading Print Media When Manual Duplex Printing" on page 224.

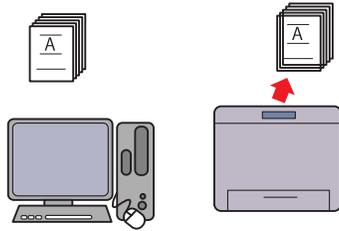
Print From USB Memory (USB Direct Print)



Print From USB Memory feature allows you to print directly from your USB storage device without starting your computer. Without requiring you to start your computer and an application, this feature allows quick printing with simple procedures.

For more information, see "Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device" on page 231.

**Printing Through Wireless Connection (Wireless Print)
(Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)**



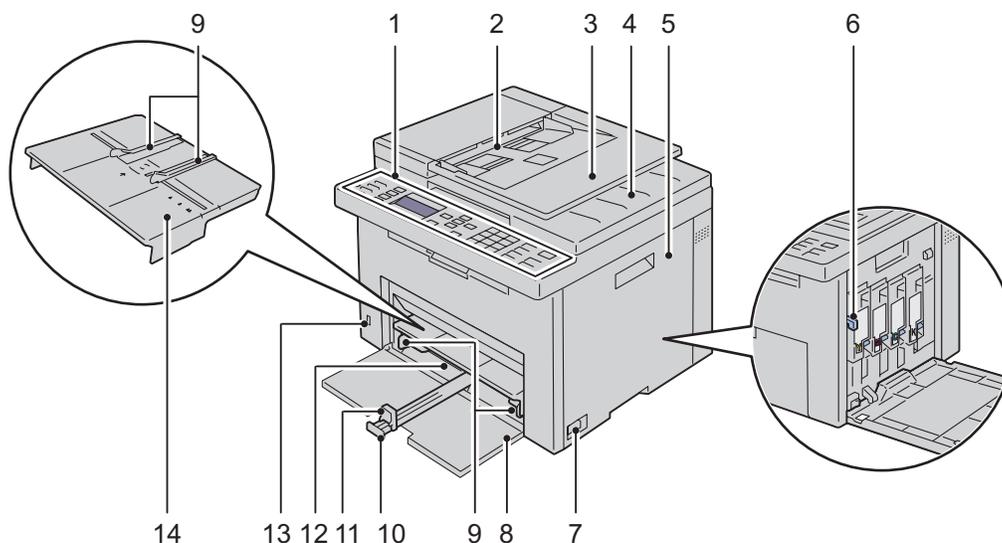
The Wireless LAN feature on your printer allows you to install the printer at any location, and enables printing without a wired connection to your computer.
For more information, see "Wireless Connection (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer Only)" on page 37.

About the Printer

This chapter provides an overview of your Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer.

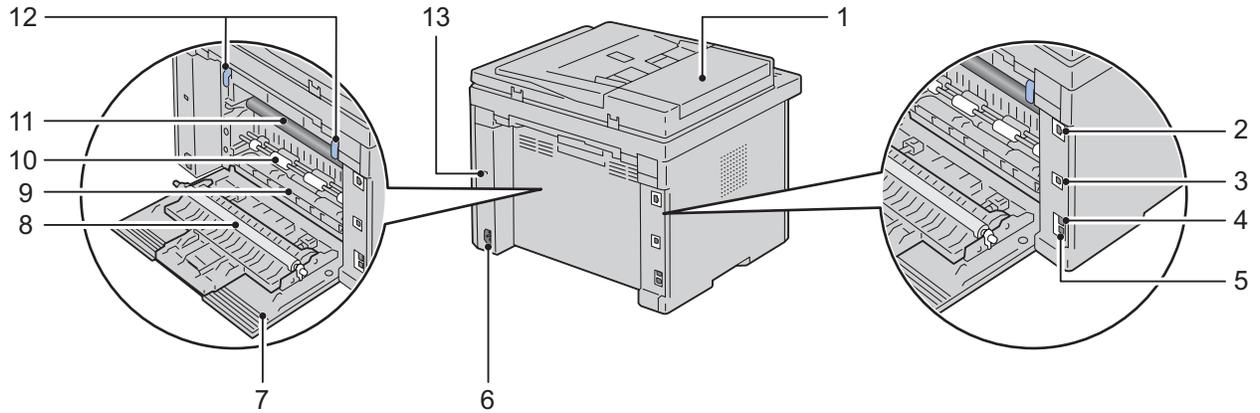
NOTE: The images used in this manual are those of the Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Front View



1	Operator Panel	2	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
3	Document Feeder Tray	4	Document Output Tray
5	Toner Access Cover	6	Print Head Cleaning Rod
7	Power Switch	8	Front Cover
9	Paper Width Guides	10	MPF Extension
11	Length Guide	12	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)
13	Front USB Port	14	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

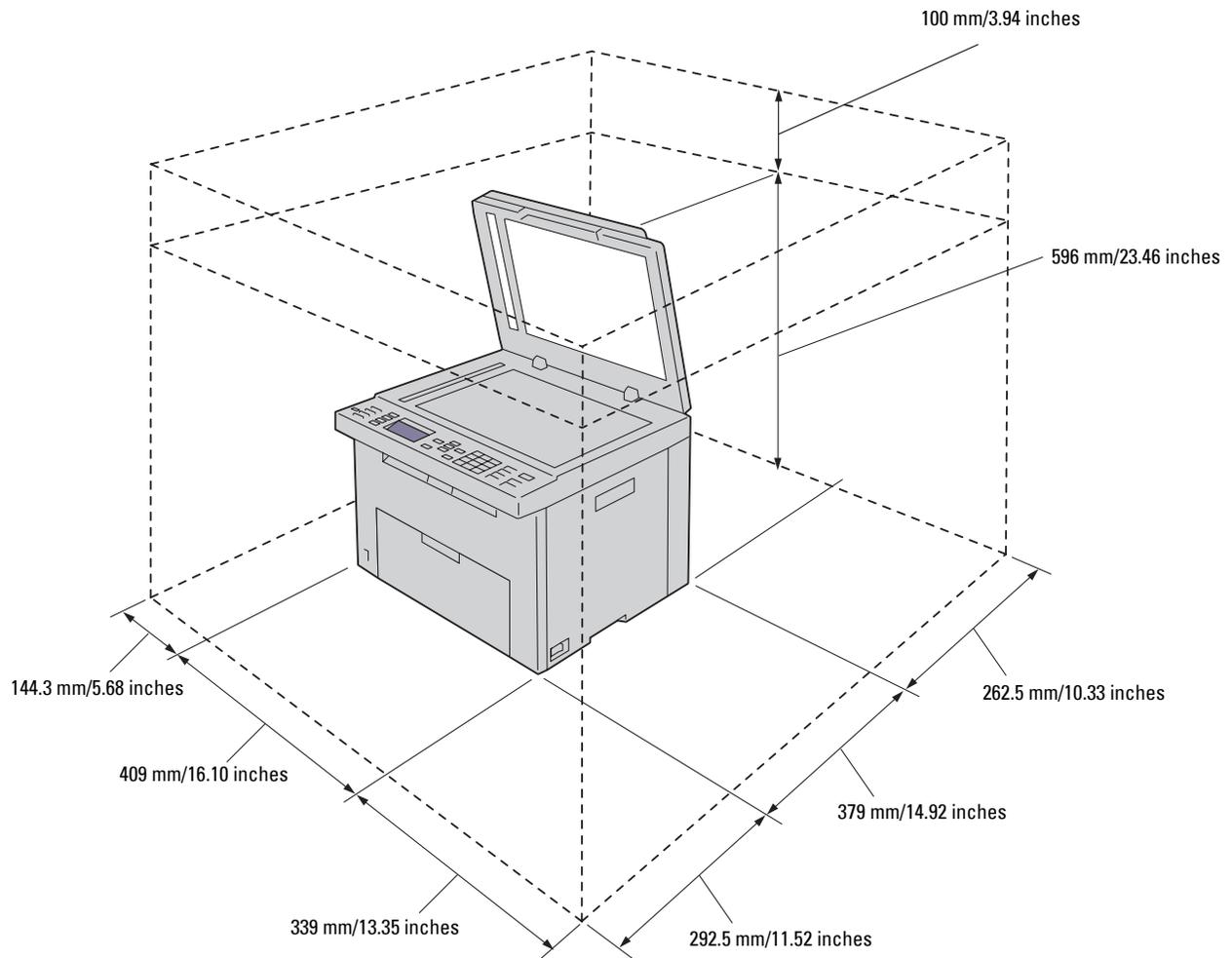
Rear View



1	ADF Cover	2	Ethernet Port
3	USB Port	4	Wall Jack Connector
5	Phone Connector	6	Power Connector
7	Rear Cover	8	Transfer Roller
9	Paper Chute	10	Paper Feed Roller
11	Transfer Belt	12	Levers
13	Security Slot		

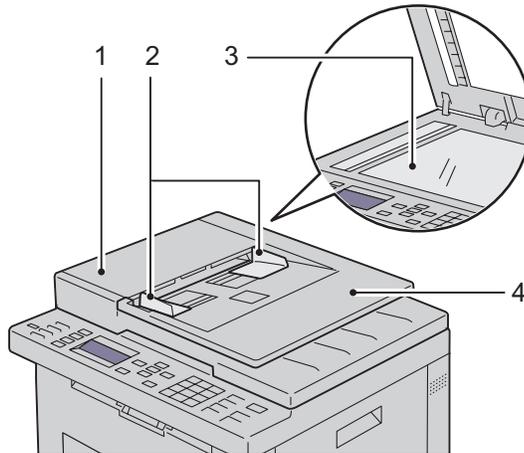
Space Requirements

Place the printer at a location such that there is adequate space for using the printer feeder and covers.



CAUTION: To avoid irregular screen image or malfunctioning of your printer, avoid placing the printer in direct sunlight with the front cover opened.

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)



-
- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | ADF Cover |
| 2 | Document Guides |
| 3 | Document Glass |
| 4 | Document Feeder Tray |
-

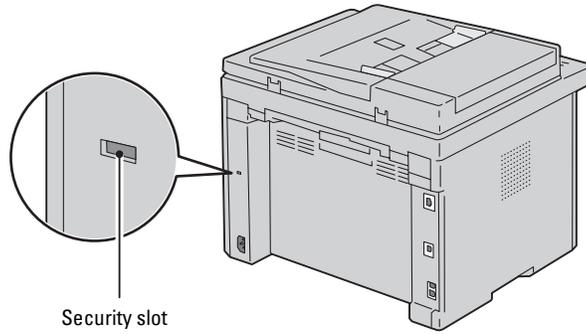
Operator Panel



For more information on the operator panel, see "Operator Panel" on page 91.

Securing the Printer

To protect your printer from theft, you can use the optional Kensington lock. Attach the Kensington lock to the security slot on your printer.



For details, see the operating instructions supplied with the Kensington lock.

Ordering Supplies

You can order consumables from Dell on the Internet when using a networked printer. Enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser, launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, and click the **Order Supplies at:** to order toner for your printer.

You can also order toner cartridges by the following method:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer** → **Dell Supplies Management System**.

The Dell Supplies Management System window appears.

- 2 Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.

- 3 If ordering from the web:

- a Select a web address from the **Select Reorder URL** list.

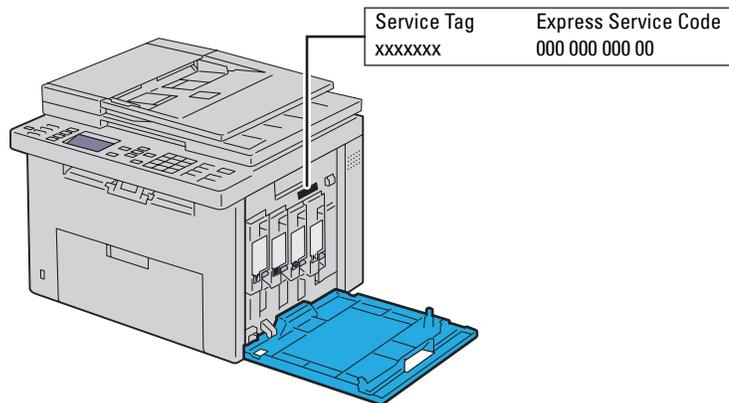
- b Click the **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.

The **Dell C1765nf/C1765nfw Color MPF - Dell Supplies Management System** screen appears.

- c Enter the Service Tag, and then click **OK**.

The Service Tag is located inside the toner access cover of your printer.

Dell supplies web site appears.



If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

Printer Setup

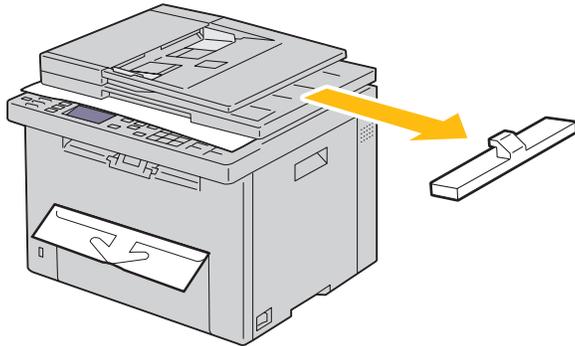
5	Removing Packaging Material.....	33
6	Connecting Your Printer	35
7	Setting Up Your Printer.....	47
8	Setting the IP Address	53
9	Loading Paper.....	57
10	Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Windows®	65
11	Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Macintosh	85

Removing Packaging Material

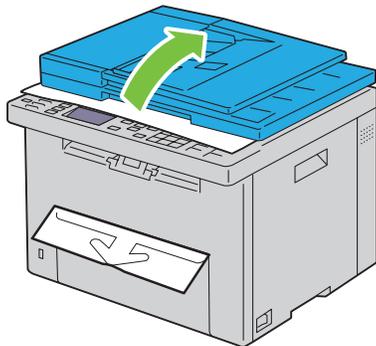
This chapter provides an overview of your Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer.

NOTE: The images used in this manual are those of the Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

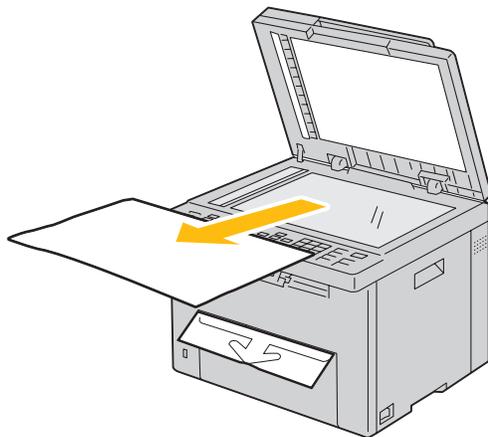
- 1 Remove the packaging material from the printer.



- 2 Lift and open the document cover.



- 3 Remove the protective sheet from the document glass.

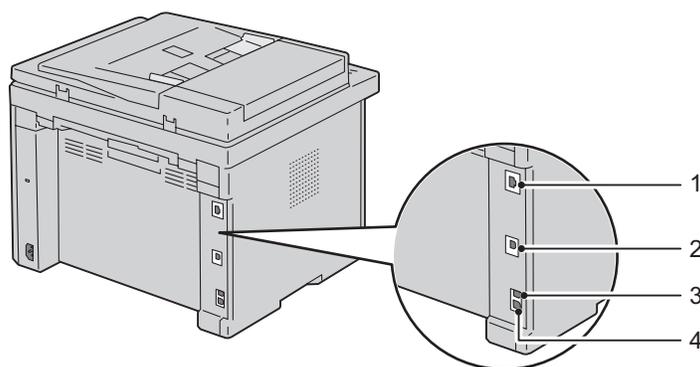


Connecting Your Printer

Your Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

Connection type	Connection specifications
Wireless	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)
USB	USB 2.0 compatible
Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX compatible
Wall jack connector	RJ11
Phone connector	RJ11

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.



1 Ethernet Port



2 USB Port



3 Wall Jack Connector



4 Phone Connector



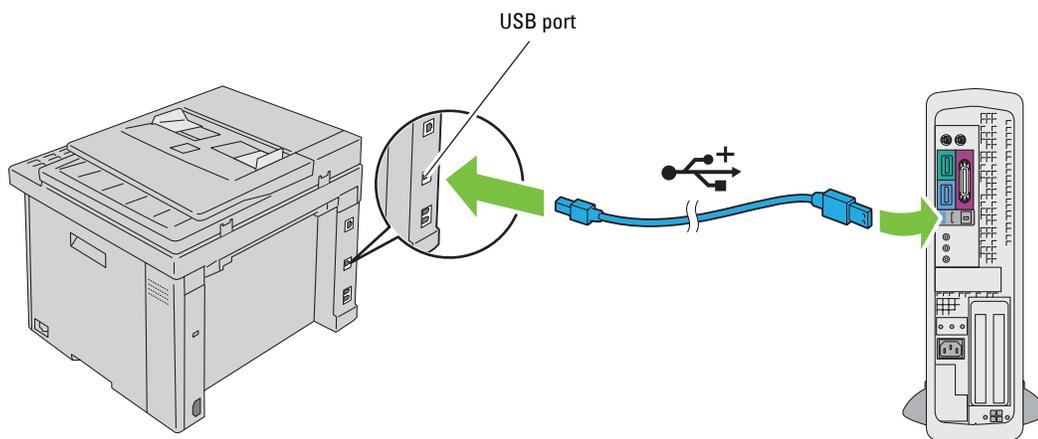
Connecting Printer to Computer or Network

Direct Connection

A local printer is a printer which is directly attached to your computer using a USB cable. If your printer is attached to a network, go to "Ethernet Connection" on page 36.

To connect the printer to a computer:

- 1 Ensure that the printer, computer, and any other attached devices are turned off and unplugged from the power source/outlet.
- 2 Connect the smaller USB connector into the USB port at the back of the printer.



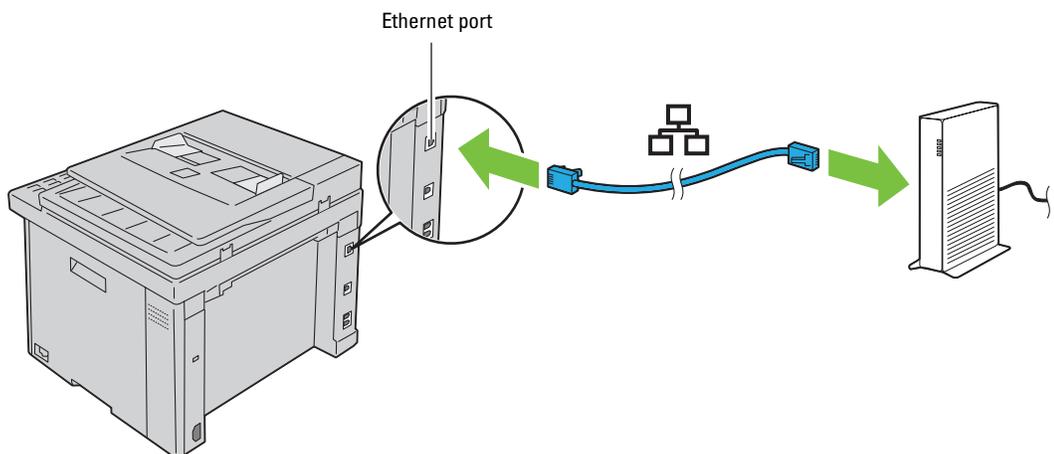
- 3 Connect the other end of the cable into a USB port of your computer.

CAUTION: Do not connect the printer USB cable to the USB port available on the keyboard.

Ethernet Connection

To connect the printer to a network:

- 1 Ensure that the printer, computer and any other connected devices have been turned off and all cables have been disconnected.
- 2 Connect the Ethernet cable.



NOTE: Connect the Ethernet cable, only if you need to setup a wired connection.

To connect the printer to the network, connect one end of an Ethernet cable into the Ethernet port at the rear of the printer, and the other end to a LAN drop or hub.

To setup a wireless connection, see "Wireless Connection (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer Only)" on page 37.

Wireless Connection (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer Only)

The specifications of wireless setting function are described below:

Item	Specification
Connectivity	Wireless
Connectivity Standard	IEEE 802.11b/802.11g compliant
Bandwidth	2.4 GHz
Data Transfer Rate	IEEE 802.11b mode: 11, 5.5, 2, 1 Mbps IEEE 802.11g mode: 54, 48, 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 Mbps
Security	64 (40-bit key)/ 128 (104-bit key) WEP, WPA-PSK (TKIP, AES), WPA2-PSK (AES) (IEEE 802.1x attestation function of WPA 1x non-corresponds), Mixed Mode PSK
Wi-Fi Protected Setup® (WPS) ^{*1}	Push Button Configuration (PBC), Personal Identification Number (PIN)

^{*1} WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

You can select a method to configure a wireless setting from the following:

WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi | WPS Button)^{*1}

WPS-PBC (Operator Panel Menu)^{*1}

WPS-PIN^{*2}

Auto SSID Setup

Manual SSID Setup

^{*1} WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by starting WPS-PBC on the printer with the  (Wi-Fi | WPS) button or operator panel menu, and then pressing the button provided on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. This setting is available only when the access point supports WPS-PBC.

^{*2} WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number) is a method to authenticate and register devices required for wireless configuration, by entering PIN assignments in the printer and computer. This setting, performed through access point, is available only when the access points of your wireless router supports WPS.

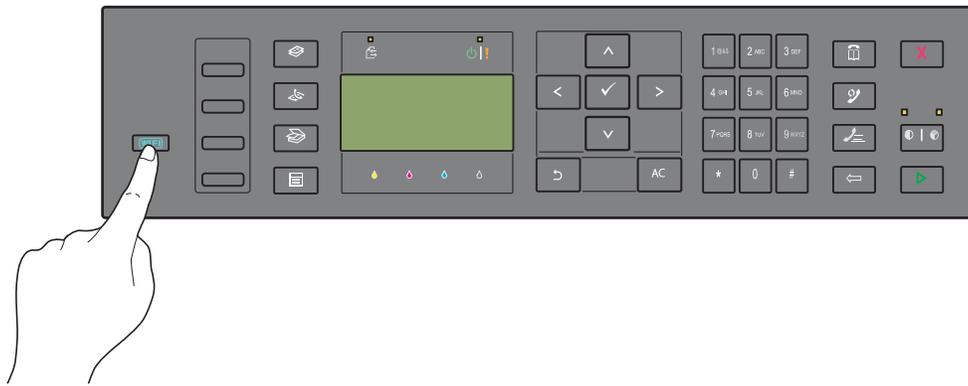
WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi | WPS Button)

You can start WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) by pressing the **WiFi** (Wi-Fi | WPS) button.

-  **NOTE:** WPS-PBC is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PBC.
-  **NOTE:** Before starting WPS-PBC with the **WiFi** (Wi-Fi | WPS) button, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. For information about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.
-  **NOTE:** For more information on the **WiFi** (Wi-Fi | WPS) button, see "Status of Wi-Fi | WPS Button Backlight (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)" on page 93.
If a problem occurs or error messages are displayed on the operator panel, see "Wireless Problems (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)" on page 356.

- 1 Press and hold the **WiFi** (Wi-Fi | WPS) button on the printer for 2 seconds.

Ensure that the **WiFi** (Wi-Fi | WPS) button starts to flash and **Press WPS Button on WPS Router** appears on the operator panel.



- 2 Start the WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router within two minutes.
- 3 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

WPS-PBC (Operator Panel Menu)

You can start WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration) from the operator panel.

-  **NOTE:** WPS-PBC is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PBC.
-  **NOTE:** Before starting WPS-PBC, confirm the position of the WPS button (button name may vary) on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router. For information about WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.
-  **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter Admin Menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until System appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until Admin Menu appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until Network appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until WPS appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Ensure that Push Button Control appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 7 Ensure that Yes appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

Ensure that Press WPS Button on WPS Router is displayed, and start the WPS-PBC on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router within two minutes.

- 8 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

WPS-PIN

The PIN code of WPS-PIN can only be configured from the operator panel.

-  **NOTE:** WPS-PIN is available only when the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router supports WPS-PIN.
-  **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter Admin Menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until System appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until Admin Menu appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until Network appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until WPS appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Ensure that PIN Code appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 7 Write down the displayed 8-digit PIN code or select Print PIN Code. The PIN code is printed.
- 8 Ensure that Start Configuration appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 9 Ensure that WPS AP Searching is displayed, and enter the PIN code displayed on step 7 into the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router.
 -  **NOTE:** For WPS operation on the wireless LAN access point (Registrar) or router, refer to the manual supplied with the product.
- 10 When the WPS operation is successful and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Auto SSID Setup

-  **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter Admin Menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until System appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until Admin Menu appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until Network appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until Wireless Setup appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

The printer automatically searches the access points on wireless network.
- 6 Press the ✓ button until the desired access point appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

If the desired access point does not appear, go to "Manual SSID Setup" on page 41.

-  **NOTE:** Some hidden SSID may not be displayed. If the SSID is not detected turn on SSID broadcast from the router.

- 7 Enter the passphrase or WEP key.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WPA, WPA2 or Mixed in step 6:

- Enter the passphrase, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

When the encryption type of the selected access point is WEP in step 6:

- Enter the WEP key, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

-  **NOTE:** A passphrase is an encryption key for WPA and WPA2 encryption which consists of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters. It may be described as a key on some access points or routers. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the access point or router.

- 8 The Restart System screen appears and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Manual SSID Setup

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter Admin Menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until System appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until Admin Menu appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until Network appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until Wireless Setup appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Press the ✓ button until Manual Setup appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 7 Enter the SSID, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 8 Select the network mode from Infrastructure and Ad-hoc depending on your environment, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

If you select Infrastructure, proceed to step 9.

If you select Ad-hoc, proceed to step 10.

- 9 Select the encryption type from No Security, Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA2-PSK-AES, or WEP.

If you do not set security for your wireless network:

- Press the ✓ button until No Security appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

To use Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES encryption:

- a Press the ✓ button until Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK-TKIP, or WPA2-PSK-AES appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- b Enter the passphrase, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** A passphrase is an encryption key for WPA and WPA2 encryption which consists of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters. It may be described as a key on some access points or routers. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the access point or router.

To use WEP encryption:

- a Press the ✓ button until WEP appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- b Enter the WEP key, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- c Press the ✓ button to highlight the desired transmit key from WEP Key 1 to WEP Key 4, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

Proceed to step 11.

- 10 Select the encryption type from No Security or WEP.

If you do not set security for your wireless network:

- Ensure that No Security appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

To use WEP encryption:

- a Press the ✓ button until WEP appears, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- b Enter the WEP key, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- c Press the ✓ button to highlight the desired transmit key from WEP Key 1 to WEP Key 4, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 11 The Restart System screen appears and the printer is rebooted, wireless LAN connection setting is completed.

Reconfiguring the Wireless Setting

To change the wireless setting through an Ethernet or wireless connection from your computer, perform the following.

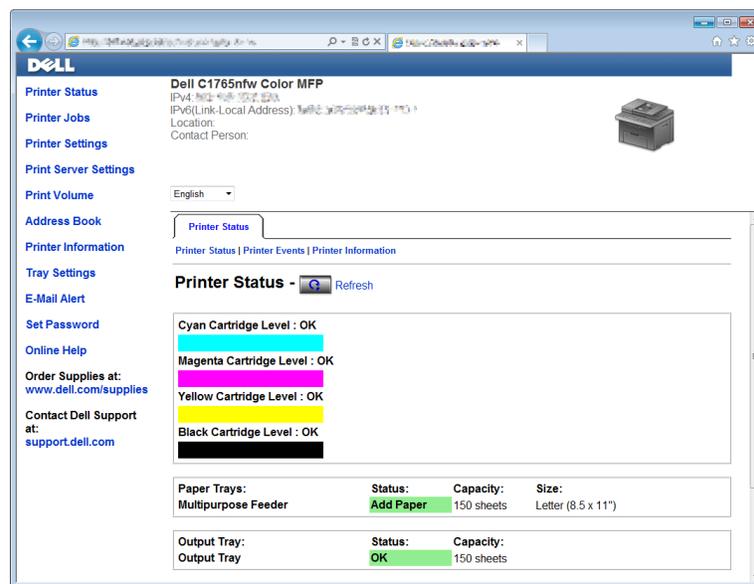
 **NOTE:** To change the wireless setting through wireless connection, ensure that the wireless connection setting is completed in "Wireless Connection (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer Only)" on page 37.

 **NOTE:** The following settings are available when the network mode is set to infrastructure in "Wireless Connection (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer Only)" on page 37.

- 1 Check the IP address of the printer.

For details about how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 55.

- 2 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** by entering the IP address of the printer in your web browser.



- 3 Click **Print Server Settings**.

- 4 Click **Print Server Settings** tab.

- 5 Click **Wireless LAN**.

- 6 Change the wireless setting of the printer.

- 7 Reboot the printer.

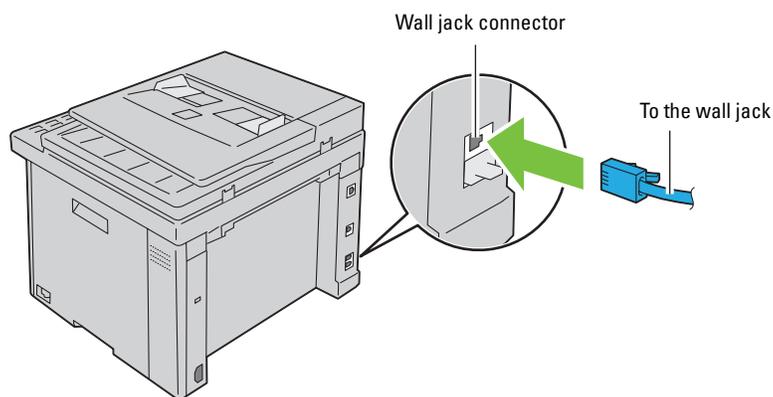
- 8 Change the wireless settings on your computer or access point accordingly.

 **NOTE:** To change the wireless settings on your computer, refer to the manuals provided with the wireless adapter or if your computer provides a wireless adapter tool, change the wireless settings using that tool.

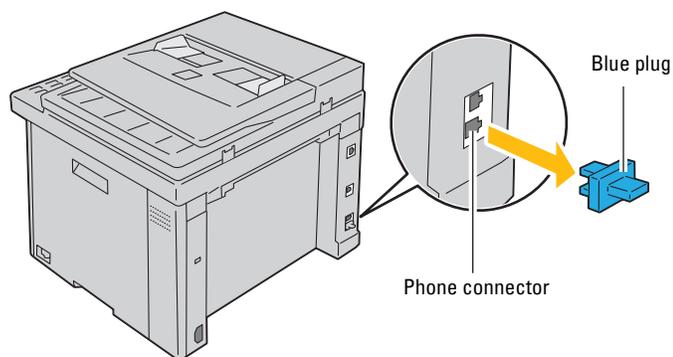
Connecting the Telephone Line

NOTE: Do not connect your printer directly to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL). This may damage the printer. To use a DSL, you will need to use an appropriate DSL filter. Contact your service provider for the DSL filter.

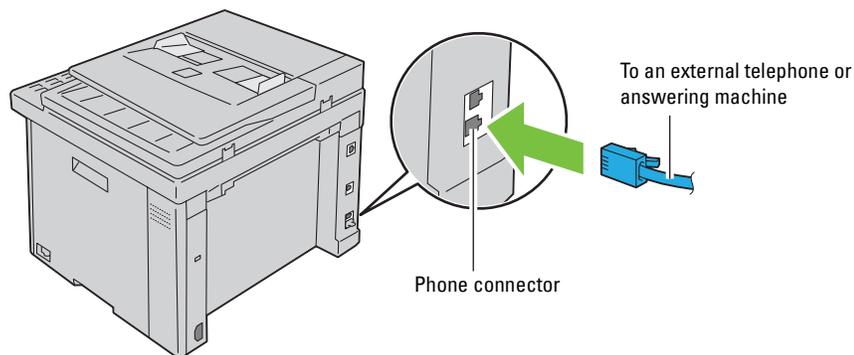
- 1 Plug one end of a telephone line cord to the wall jack connector and the other end to an active wall jack.



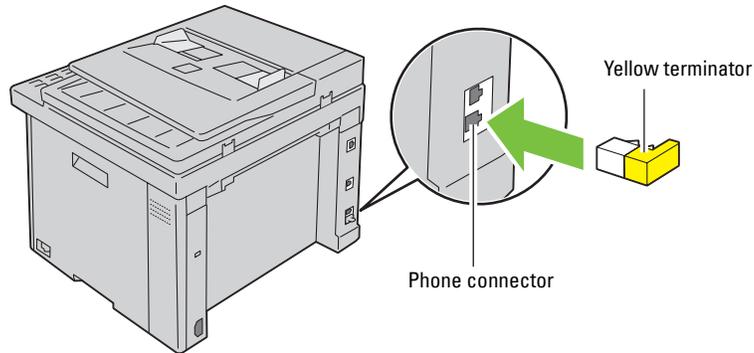
- 2 Remove the blue plug from the phone connector (PHONE).



- 3 To connect a telephone and/or answering machine to your printer, plug the telephone or answering machine line cord into the phone connector (PHONE).



If the phone communication is serial in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), and you are supplied with a yellow terminator, insert the yellow terminator into the phone connector (☎).



Turning On the Printer

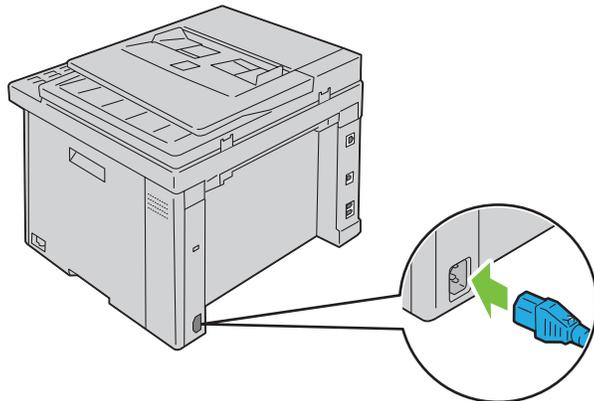


WARNING: Do not use extension cords or power strips.



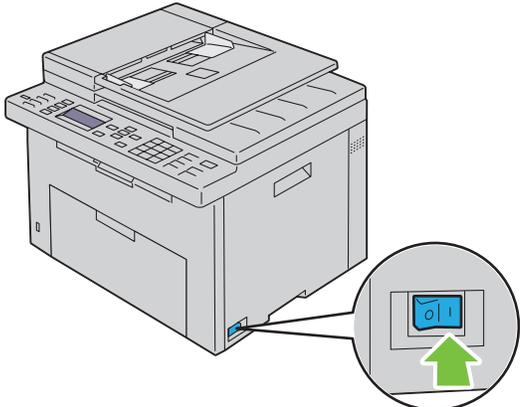
WARNING: The printer should not be connected to an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) system.

- 1 Connect the power cable to the power connector on the rear of your printer (see "Rear View" on page 26).



- 2 Connect the other end of the cable to the power source.

3 Turn on the printer.



4 Follow the on-screen instructions in the operator panel to configure the initial settings of your printer.

Setting Up Your Printer

Setting Initial Settings on the Operator Panel

You need to set the printer language, country, clock date, and time when you turn on printer for the first time.

When you turn the printer on, the wizard screen to perform the initial setup appears on the operator panel. Follow the steps below to set the initial settings.

 **NOTE:** If you do not start configuring the initial settings, Ready appears on the operator panel in three minutes. After that, you can set the following initial setup by enabling Power On Wizard on the operator panel or **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool** if needed.

 **NOTE:** For more information on operator panel, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 163.

 **NOTE:** For more information on **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool" on page 97.

- 1 Ensure that Please Select Language appears, and then select the language you want to use on the operator panel from the following drop-down list, and then press the ✓ (set) button.

English
Français
Italiano
Deutsch
Español
Nederlands
Dansk
Norsk
Svenska

- 2 Press the ✓ (set) button to start setting the country.
- 3 Ensure that Please Select Country appears. Select your country from the drop-down list, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 4 Ensure that Please Select Time Zone appears. Select the appropriate time zone from the following drop-down list, and then press the ✓ (set) button.

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Africa	(UTC) Accra, Bamako, Dakar, Nouakchott
	(UTC) Casablanca
	(UTC +01:00) Algiers, Douala, Libreville, Luanda
	(UTC +01:00) Tunis
	(UTC +01:00) Windhoek
	(UTC +02:00) Cairo
	(UTC +02:00) Harare, Johannesburg, Kinshasa, Tripoli
	(UTC +03:00) Addis Ababa, Khartoum, Mogadishu, Nairobi

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Americas	(UTC -10:00) Adak
	(UTC -09:00) Alaska
	(UTC -08:00) Pacific Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -08:00) Tijuana
	(UTC -07:00) Arizona, Dawson Creek, Sonora
	(UTC -07:00) Chihuahua, Mazatlan
	(UTC -07:00) Mountain Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -06:00) Cancun, Mexico City, Monterrey
	(UTC -06:00) Central America
	(UTC -06:00) Central Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -06:00) Saskatchewan
	(UTC -05:00) Atikokan, Resolute
	(UTC -05:00) Bogota, Lima, Panama, Quito
	(UTC -05:00) Cayman Islands, Jamaica, Port-au-Prince
	(UTC -05:00) Eastern Time (US & Canada)
	(UTC -05:00) Grand Turk
	(UTC -05:00) Havana
	(UTC -04:30) Caracas
	(UTC -04:00) Asuncion
	(UTC -04:00) Atlantic Time (Canada)
	(UTC -04:00) Blanc-Sablon
	(UTC -04:00) Caribbean Islands
	(UTC -04:00) Cuiaba
	(UTC -04:00) Georgetown, La Paz, Manaus
	(UTC -04:00) Thule
	(UTC -03:30) St. John's
	(UTC -03:00) Brasilia, Cayenne, Paramaribo
	(UTC -03:00) Buenos Aires
	(UTC -03:00) Greenland
	(UTC -03:00) Miquelon
	(UTC -03:00) Montevideo
	(UTC -02:00) Noronha
Antarctica	(UTC -04:00) Palmer Archipelago, Santiago
	(UTC -03:00) Rothera
	(UTC +03:00) Syowa
	(UTC +06:00) Mawson, Vostok
	(UTC +07:00) Davis
	(UTC +08:00) Casey
	(UTC +10:00) Dumont d'Urville
(UTC +12:00) McMurdo	

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Asia	(UTC +02:00) Amman
	(UTC +02:00) Beirut
	(UTC +02:00) Damascus
	(UTC +02:00) Jerusalem
	(UTC +02:00) Nicosia
	(UTC +02:00) Palestine
	(UTC +03:00) Aden, Baghdad, Qatar, Riyadh
	(UTC +03:30) Tehran
	(UTC +04:00) Baku
	(UTC +04:00) Dubai, Muscat, Tbilisi
	(UTC +04:00) Yerevan
	(UTC +04:30) Kabul
	(UTC +05:00) Aqtau, Aqtobe, Ashgabat, Samarkand
	(UTC +05:00) Ekaterinburg
	(UTC +05:00) Karachi
	(UTC +05:30) Colombo, Kolkata
	(UTC +05:45) Kathmandu
	(UTC +06:00) Almaty, Bishkek, Dhaka, Thimphu
	(UTC +06:00) Novosibirsk, Omsk
	(UTC +06:30) Yangon (Rangoon)
	(UTC +07:00) Bangkok, Ho Chi Minh, Hovd, Jakarta
	(UTC +07:00) Krasnoyarsk
	(UTC +08:00) Chongqing, Hong Kong, Shanghai
	(UTC +08:00) Irkutsk
	(UTC +08:00) Kuala Lumpur, Makassar, Manila, Singapore
	(UTC +08:00) Taipei
	(UTC +08:00) Ulaan Baatar
	(UTC +09:00) Dili, Jayapura
	(UTC +09:00) Pyongyang
	(UTC +09:00) Seoul
	(UTC +09:00) Tokyo
	(UTC +09:00) Yakutsk
	(UTC +10:00) Sakhalin, Vladivostok
(UTC +11:00) Magadan	
(UTC +12:00) Anadyr, Kamchatka	
Atlantic Ocean	(UTC -04:00) Bermuda
	(UTC -04:00) Stanley
	(UTC -02:00) South Georgia Island
	(UTC -01:00) Azores, Scoresbysund
	(UTC -01:00) Cape Verde
(UTC) Reykjavik	

Geographic Region	Time Zone
Australia	(UTC +08:00) Perth
	(UTC +08:45) Eucla
	(UTC +09:30) Adelaide
	(UTC +09:30) Darwin
	(UTC +10:00) Brisbane, Lindeman
	(UTC +10:00) Hobart, Melbourne, Sydney
	(UTC +10:30) Lord Howe Island
Europe	(UTC) Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London
	(UTC +01:00) Amsterdam, Berlin, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna
	(UTC +01:00) Belgrade, Bratislava, Budapest, Prague
	(UTC +01:00) Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris
	(UTC +01:00) Sarajevo, Skopje, Warsaw, Zagreb
	(UTC +02:00) Athens, Bucharest, Istanbul
	(UTC +02:00) Helsinki, Kiev, Riga, Sofia
	(UTC +02:00) Kaliningrad, Minsk
	(UTC +03:00) Moscow
	(UTC +04:00) Samara
Indian Ocean	(UTC +03:00) Antananarivo, Comoro Islands, Mayotte
	(UTC +04:00) Mahe, Reunion
	(UTC +04:00) Mauritius
	(UTC +05:00) Kerguelen, Maldives
	(UTC +06:00) Chagos
	(UTC +06:30) Cocos Islands
Pacific Ocean	(UTC +07:00) Christmas Island
	(UTC -11:00) Midway Island, Niue, Samoa
	(UTC -10:00) Cook Islands, Hawaii, Tahiti
	(UTC -09:30) Marquesas Islands
	(UTC -09:00) Gambier Islands
	(UTC -08:00) Pitcairn Islands
	(UTC -06:00) Easter Island
	(UTC -06:00) Galapagos Islands
	(UTC +09:00) Palau
	(UTC +10:00) Guam, Port Moresby, Saipan
	(UTC +11:00) Efate, Guadalcanal, Kosrae
	(UTC +11:30) Norfolk Island
	(UTC +12:00) Auckland
	(UTC +12:00) Fiji, Marshall Islands
	(UTC +12:45) Chatham
(UTC +13:00) Tongatapu	
(UTC +14:00) Kiritimati	

- 5 Ensure that `Please Enter Date` appears. Specify the current date, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 6 Ensure that `Please Enter Time` appears. Specify the current time, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 7 Press the ✓ (set) button for Fax Setup.
If you want to skip the Fax Setup, press the ▶ (Start) button and then restart the printer.
- 8 Ensure that `Please Enter Fax Number` appears. Enter your fax number, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 9 Ensure that `Please Enter Name` appears. Enter a name, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 10 Press the ✓ (set) button, and then restart the printer.

Printer Setup Using the Software and Documentation Disc

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer to start **Dell Printer Setup**.
- 2 Double-click the **Dell C1765 Installer** icon, and follow the on-screen instructions to connect the computer and the printer.

 **NOTE:** If the *Software and Documentation* disc does not automatically launch, try the following steps.

For Windows® XP, Windows Vista®, Windows 7, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Accessories** (for Windows Vista and Windows 7) → **Run**.
- 2 Type `D:\setup.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012:

- 1 Point to the bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type **Run** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Run**.
- 2 Type `D:\setup.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive), and then click **OK**.

Setting the IP Address

Assigning an IP Address

An IP address is a unique number that consists of four sections that are delimited by a period and can include up to three digits in each section, for example, 111 . 222 . 33 . 44.

You can select the IP mode from Dual Stack, IPv4, and IPv6. If your network supports both IPv4 and IPv6, select Dual Stack.

 **CAUTION:** Assigning an IP address that is already in use can cause network performance issues.

 **NOTE:** Assigning an IP address is considered as an advanced function and is normally done by a system administrator.

 **NOTE:** When you assign an IP address manually in **IPv6 Mode**, use the **Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool**. To open the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, use the link local address. To check a link local address, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 55.

 **NOTE:** Depending on the address class, the range of the IP address assigned may be different. On Class A, for example, an IP address in the range from 0 . 0 . 0 . 0 to 127 . 255 . 255 . 255 will be assigned. For assignment of IP addresses, contact your system administrator.

You can assign the IP address by using the operator panel or using the **Tool Box**.

The Operator Panel

For more information on using your operator panel, see "Operator Panel" on page 91.

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter Admin Menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 1 Turn on the printer.
Ensure that Ready appears on the operator panel.
- 2 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until System appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until Admin Menu appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until Network appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 6 Press the ✓ button until TCP/IP appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 7 Press the ✓ button until IPv4 appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 8 Ensure that Get IP Address appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 9 Press the ✓ button until Panel appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 10 Press the < button and ensure that Get IP Address appears.
- 11 Press the ✓ button until IP Address appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
The cursor is located at the first three digits of the IP address.
- 12 Enter the value of the IP address using the numeric keypad.
- 13 Press the > button.
The next three digits are highlighted.
- 14 Repeat step 12 and step 13 to enter all of the digits in the IP address, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 15 Press the < button and ensure that IP Address appears.

- 16 Press the **✓** button until `Subnet Mask` appears, and then press the **✓** (set) button.
The cursor is located at the first three digits of the subnet mask.
- 17 Enter the value of the subnet mask using the numeric keypad.
- 18 Press the **>** button.
The next three digits are highlighted.
- 19 Repeat step 17 and step 18 to set subnet mask, and then press the **✓** (set) button.
- 20 Press the **<** button and ensure that `Subnet Mask` appears.
- 21 Press the **✓** button until `Gateway Address` appears, and then press the **✓** (set) button.
The cursor is located at the first three digits of the gateway address.
- 22 Enter the value of the gateway address using the numeric keypad.
- 23 Press the **>** button.
The next three digits are highlighted.
- 24 Repeat step 22 and step 23 to set gateway address, and then press the **✓** (set) button.
- 25 Turn off and turn on the printer.

The Tool Box

 **NOTE:** When you use IPv6 Mode for network printing, the **Tool Box** cannot be used to assign an IP address.

- 1 Click `Start` → `All Programs` → `Dell Printers` → `Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer` → `Tool Box`.

 **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** dialog box opens in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click the name of **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **TCP/IP Settings** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **TCP/IP Settings** page is displayed.
- 4 Select the mode from **IP Address Mode**, and then enter the values in **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address**.
- 5 Press the **Apply New Settings** button to take effect.

The IP address is assigned to your printer. To verify the setting, open the web browser on any computer connected to the network and enter the IP address into the address bar on the browser. If the IP address is set up correctly, the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool displays in your browser.

You can also assign the IP address to the printer when installing the printer drivers with installer. When you use the **Network Installation** feature, and the `Get IP Address` is set to `Auto IP` on the operator panel menu, you can set the IP address from `0.0.0.0` to the desired IP address on the printer selection window.

Verifying the IP Settings

You can confirm the settings by using the operator panel, printing the printer settings report, or using the ping command.

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter Admin Menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

The Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ (set) button until System appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ (set) button until Admin Menu appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ (set) button until Network appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ (set) button until TCP/IP appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.
- 6 Press the ✓ (set) button until IPv4 appears, and then press the ✓ (set) button.

Check the IP address displayed on the operator panel.

The System Settings Report

- 1 Print the system settings report.
For details about how to print a system settings report, see "Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel" on page 175.
- 2 Verify the correct IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address are listed in the system settings report under **Wired Network** or **Wireless Network**.
If the IP address shows 0.0.0.0 (the factory default), an IP address has not been assigned. To assign one for your printer, see "Assigning an IP Address" on page 53.

The Ping Command

Ping the printer and verify that it responds. For example, at a command prompt on a network computer, type ping followed by the new IP address (for example, 192.168.0.11):

```
ping 192.168.0.11
```

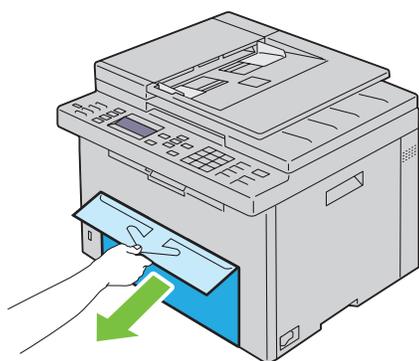
If the printer is active on the network, you will receive a reply.

Loading Paper

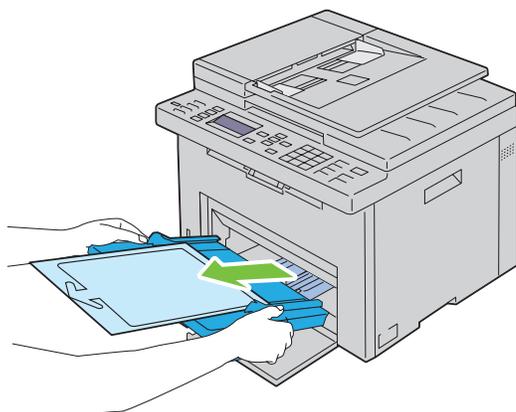
- ✎ **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.
- ✎ **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the priority sheet inserter while a printing is in progress.
- ✎ **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in your printer.
- ✎ **NOTE:** For printing envelopes, see "Loading Print Media" on page 211.

Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

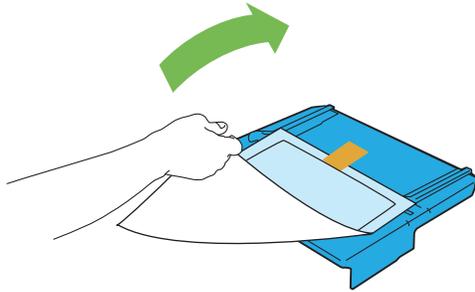
- 1 Open the front cover by pulling out the instruction sheet.



- 2 Pull the PSI out.

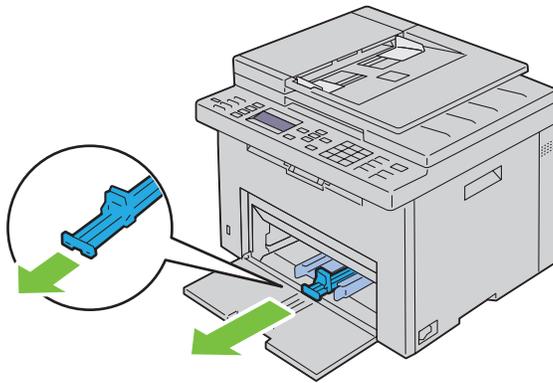


- 3 Remove the instruction sheet attached to the PSI with adhesive tape.

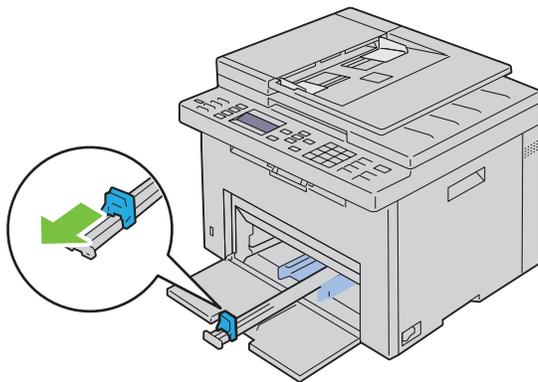


 **NOTE:** Read the instruction sheet before you use the PSI.

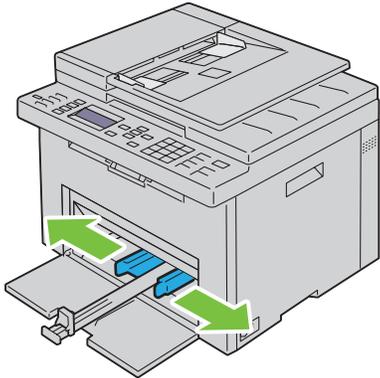
- 4 Pull the length guide forward until it stops.



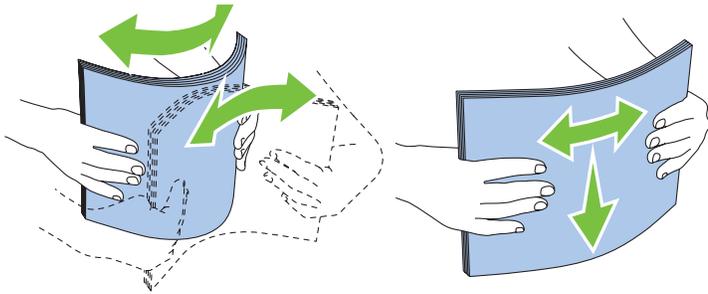
- 5 Pull the MPF extension forward until it stops.



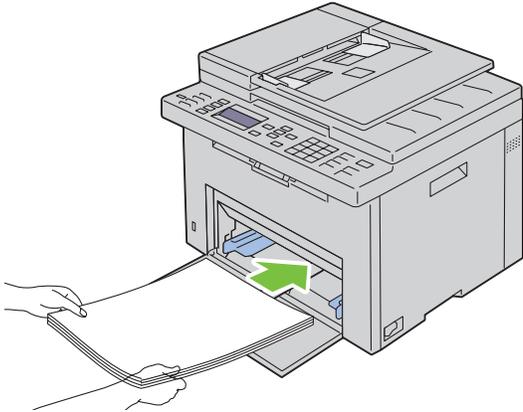
6 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum.



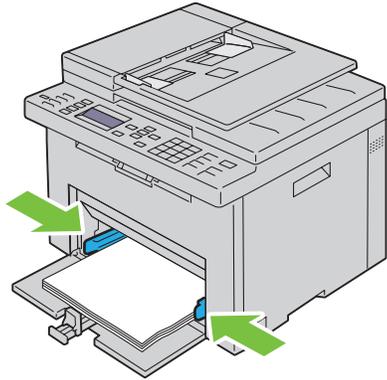
7 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



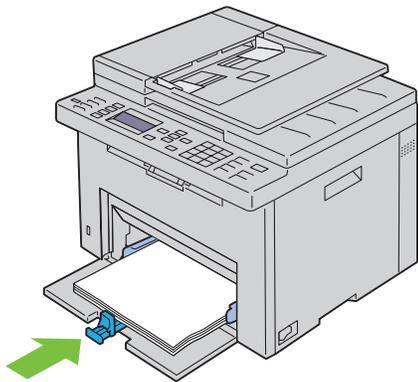
8 Load paper on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



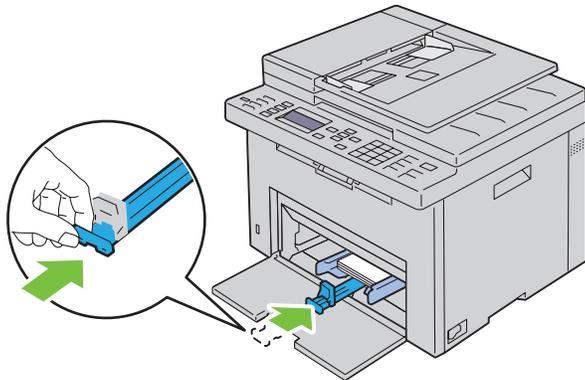
9 Adjust the width guides and length guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.

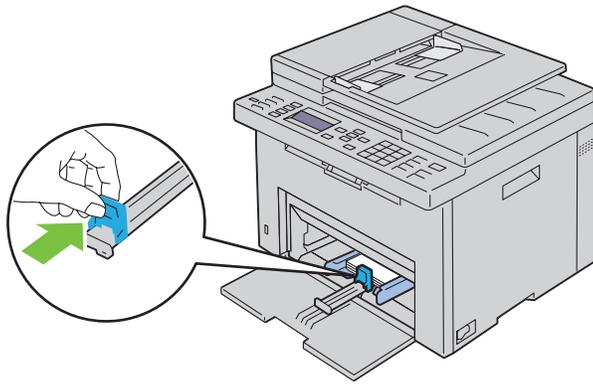


10 Slide the length guide towards the printer until it touches the print media.

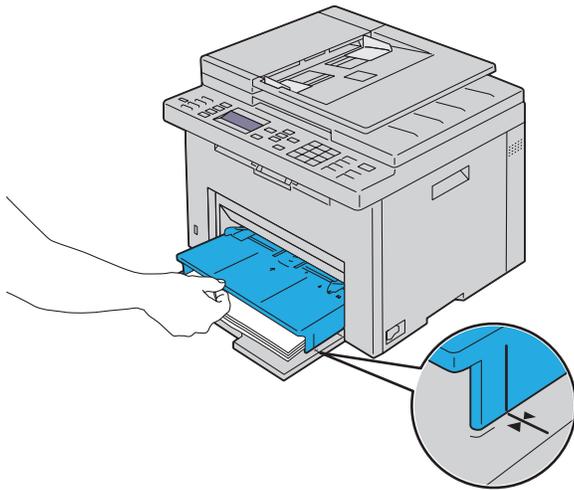
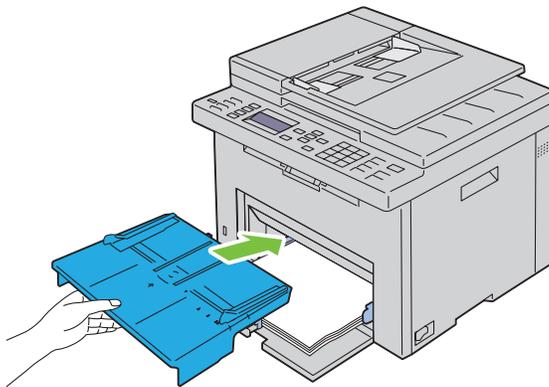


 **NOTE:** Depending on the size of print media, first slide the MPF extension backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.





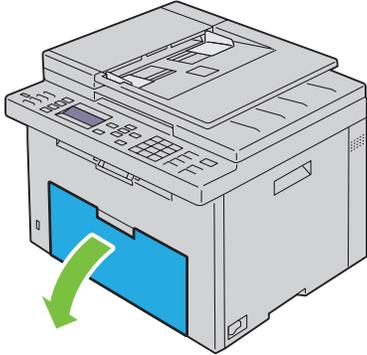
11 Insert the PSI into the printer and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.



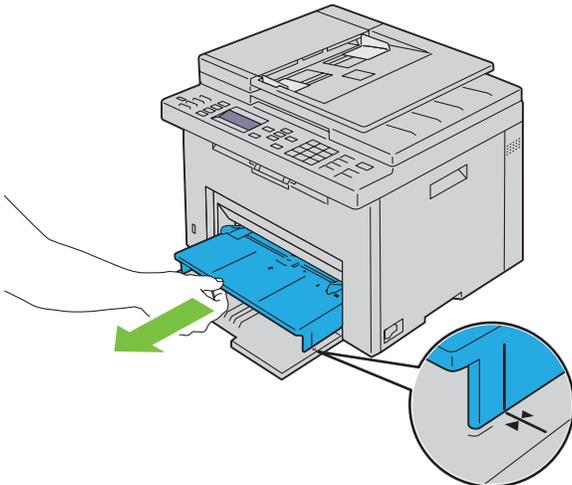
12 Select the paper type from the printer driver if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the printer driver.

Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

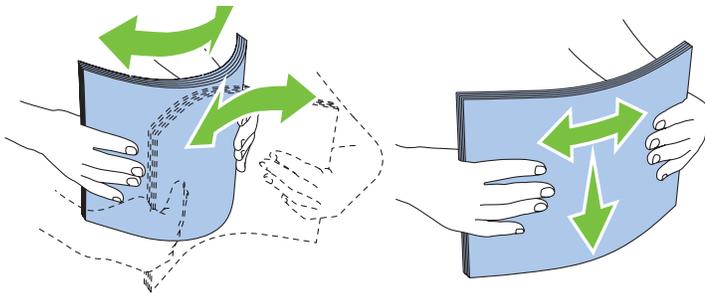
- 1 Open the front cover.



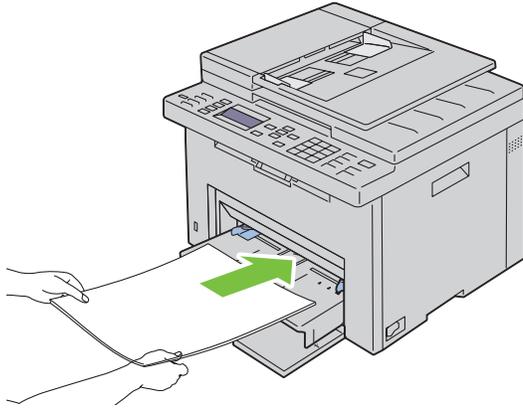
- 2 Slide the PSI forward, and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.



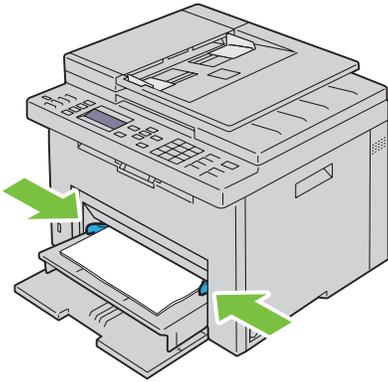
- 3 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



- 4 Load print media on the PSI with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



- 5 Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.



- 6 Select the paper type from the printer driver if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the printer driver.

Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Windows®

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Identifying Printer Driver Pre-install Status

Before installing the printer driver on your computer, check the IP address of your printer by performing one of the procedures in "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 55.

Changing the firewall settings before installing your printer

If you are running one of the following operating systems, you must change the firewall settings before installing the Dell printer software:

- Microsoft® Windows XP
- Windows Vista®
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Windows Server® 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012

 **NOTE:** For Windows XP, Service Pack 2 or 3 must be installed.

The following procedure uses Windows 7 as an example.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 3 Select **System and Security**.
- 4 Click **Allow a program through Windows Firewall**.
- 5 Click **Change settings** → **Allow another program**.
- 6 Check **Browse**.
- 7 `D:\setup.exe` (where D is the drive letter of the optical drive) in the **File name** text box, and then click **Open**.
- 8 Click **Add**, and then click **OK**.

Direct Connection Setup

For installing host-based printer driver

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer to start **Dell Printer Setup**.
- 2 Click **Install Printer Driver and Software**.
- 3 Select **Personal Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Follow the on-screen instructions to connect the computer and the printer with a USB cable, and then turn on the printer.

The Plug and Play installation starts and the installation software proceeds to the next page automatically.

- 5 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

Personal Installation

A personal printer is a printer attached to your computer or a print server using a USB. If your printer is attached to a network and not your computer, see "Network Connection Setup" on page 68.

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

 **NOTE:** Download and install the XPS printer driver at support.dell.com.

 **NOTE:** The XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box. To use this printer as the default printer, select the check box displayed under the **Printer name**. Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 11 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 12 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a local printer**.
- 5 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 8 Click **OK**.
- 9 Select your printer name and click **Next**.

- 10 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box. Click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 11 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.
- 12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 13 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
 - 2 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
 - 3 Click **Add a printer**.
 - 4 When you use Windows Server 2008 R2, click **Add a local or network printer as an administrator**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.
-  **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.
- 5 Click **Add a local printer**.
 - 6 Select the port connected to this product, and then click **Next**.
 - 7 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
 - 8 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
 - 9 Click **OK**.
 - 10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
 - 11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
 - 12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.
 - 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
 - 14 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.
- 3 Click **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers** → **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 5 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 8 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.

- 9 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.
- 10 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 11 Click **Finish**.

Network Connection Setup

Network Printer Setup on a Local Network

For installing host-based printer driver

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc into your computer to start **Dell Printer Setup**.
- 2 Click **Install Printer Driver and Software**.
- 3 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Select **Local Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Select the printer you want to install from the printer list, and then click **Next**. If the target printer is not displayed on the list, click **Refresh** to refresh the list or click **Add Printer** to add a printer to the list manually. You may specify the IP address and port name at this point.

If you have installed this printer on the server computer, select **I am setting up this printer on a server** check box.

 **NOTE:** When using AutoIP, 0.0.0.0 is displayed in the installer. Before you can continue, you must enter a valid IP address.

 **NOTE:** You can install the Web Services on Devices (WSD) printer, but the installation of using Windows Server 2008 is not supported.

 **NOTE:** If you are running any of the following operating systems, a Windows Security Alert is displayed:

- Windows Vista
- Windows Vista 64-bit Edition
- Windows 7
- Windows 7 64-bit Edition
- Windows 8
- Windows 8 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2012

To continue installing the host-based printer driver, click **Unblock** or **Allow access** (for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

- 6 Specify the printer settings, and then click **Next**.
 - a Enter the printer name.
 - b If you want other users on the network to access this printer, select **Share this printer with other computers on the network**, and then enter a share name that users can identify.
 - c If you want to set a printer as the default, select the **Set this printer as default** check box.
- 7 Select the software and documentation you want to install, and then click **Install**. You can specify folders in which to install the Dell software and documentation. To change the folders, click **Browse**.

- 8 Click **Finish** to exit the wizard when the **Ready to Print!** screen appears. If necessary, click **Print Test Page** to print a test page.

For installing XML Paper Specification (XPS) printer driver

 **NOTE:** Download and install the XPS printer driver at support.dell.com.

 **NOTE:** The XPS driver is supported on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

Windows Vista or Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
- 6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select **TCP/IP Device** for **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control Continue** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 9 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.
- 10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

Installation starts.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Continue**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 13 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator.

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select your printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
When you select your printer, go to step 8.
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.
- 6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.

- 7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.

If the **User Account Control Continue** dialog box appears, click **Continue**.

- 8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 9 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.
- 10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.

Installation starts.

- 12 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.
- 13 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select your printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.

 **NOTE:** When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, **Find a printer by name or TCP/IP** screen appears where you can find your printer using your printer name or TCP/IP.

If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 6 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.
- 8 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 9 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
- 10 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**.
- 11 Click **Next**.

Installation starts.

- 12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 13 Click **Finish**.

Windows 7 or Windows 7 64-bit Edition

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Click **Add a printer**.

- 4 Click **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 5 Select your printer or click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
When you select your printer, go to step 8.
When you click **The printer that I want isn't listed**, go to step 6.
- 6 Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or host name**, and then click **Next**.
- 7 Select **TCP/IP Device** from **Device type**, and enter the IP address for **Hostname or IP address**, and then click **Next**.
If the **User Account Control** dialog box appears, click **Yes**.

 **NOTE:** If you are an administrator on the computer, click **Yes**; otherwise, contact your administrator to continue the desired action.

- 8 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 9 Click **Browse**, then select the extracted folder in step 1, and then click **OK**.
- 10 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 11 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 12 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 13 Click **Finish**.

Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, or Windows Server 2012

- 1 Extract the zip file you downloaded to your desired location.
- 2 Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.
- 3 Click **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers** → **Add a printer**.
- 4 Click **Have Disk** to display the **Install From Disk** dialog box.
- 5 Click **Browse**, and then select the extracted folder in step 1.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Select your printer name and click **Next**.
- 8 To change the printer name, enter the printer name in the **Printer name** box, and then click **Next**.
Installation starts.
- 9 If you do not share your printer, select **Do not share this printer**. If you share your printer, select **Share this printer so that others on your network can find and use it**. Click **Next**.
- 10 As the driver installation is completed, click **Print a test page** to print a test page. To use this printer as the default printer, select the **Set as the default printer** check box.
- 11 Click **Finish**.

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to monitor the status of your network printer without leaving your desk. You can view and/or change the printer settings, monitor toner level, and acknowledge the timing of ordering replacement consumables. You can click the Dell supplies link for ordering supplies.

 **NOTE:** The **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is not available when the printer is directly connected to a computer or a print server.

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, type the printer's IP address in your web browser. The printer configuration appears on the screen.

You can set up the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** to send you an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention.

To set up e-mail alerts:

- 1 Launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.
- 2 Click **E-Mail Alert** link.
- 3 Under **E-Mail Server Settings**, enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Reply Address**, and your or key operator's e-mail address in the e-mail list box.
- 4 Click **Apply New Settings**.

 **NOTE:** **Connection pending until printer sends an alert** is displayed on the SMTP server until an error occurs.

Network Printer Setup on a Remote Network

Before Installation

Before you start remote installation, perform the following procedures.

Allow Print Spooler to Accept Client Connections

 **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2.

For Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** (for Windows Vista only) → **Accessories** (for Windows Vista only) → **Run**.
- 2 Type `gpedit.msc`, and then click **OK**.
- 3 Click **Computer Configuration** → **Administrative Templates** → **Printers**.
- 4 Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Properties**.
- 5 On the **Setting** tab, select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** (for Windows 7 only) → **Accessories** (for Windows 7 only) → **Run**.
- 2 Type `gpedit.msc`, and then click **OK**.
- 3 Click **Computer Configuration** → **Administrative Templates** → **Printers**.
- 4 Right-click **Allow Print Spooler to accept client connections** and select **Edit**.
- 5 Select **Enabled**, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Restart the computer.

Share the Firewall File and Printer

 **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

For Windows XP:

- 1 Click start → Control Panel.
- 2 Select Security Center.
- 3 Click Windows Firewall.
- 4 On the Exceptions tab, check the File and Printer Sharing check box, and then click OK.

For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Select Security.
- 3 Click Windows Firewall.
- 4 Click Change settings.
- 5 Click Continue.
- 6 On the Exceptions tab, check the File and Printer Sharing check box, and then click OK.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Double-click Windows Firewall.
- 3 Click Change settings.
- 4 On the Exceptions tab, check the File and Printer Sharing check box, and then click OK.

For Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Select System and Security.
- 3 Click Windows Firewall.
- 4 Click Allow a program or feature through Windows Firewall.
- 5 If the check boxes under Allowed programs and features: are dimmed, click Change settings.
- 6 Check the File and Printer Sharing check box. Home/Work (Private) or Public check box is automatically selected according to your settings.
If File and Printer Sharing Properties dialog box appears, click OK.
- 7 Click OK.

Start Remote Registry

 **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, and Windows 8 64-bit Edition.

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **System and Maintenance** (**System and Security** for Windows 7).
- 3 Click **Administrative Tools**.
- 4 Double-click **Services**.
- 5 Click **Continue** (for Windows Vista only).
- 6 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Start**.
- 7 Right-click **Remote Registry** and select **Properties**.
- 8 Change **Startup type**: to **Automatic**, and then click **OK**.

Disable User Account Control

 **NOTE:** Disabling the User Account Control might leave the system vulnerable to virus attacks.

 **NOTE:** This step is required for Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2.

For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **User Accounts and Family Safety**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.
- 7 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Double-click **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **Turn User Account Control on or off**.
- 4 Click **Continue**.
- 5 Clear the **Use User Account Control (UAC) to help protect your computer** check box.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Restart the computer.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Change User Account Control Settings**.
- 5 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Yes**.
- 7 Restart the computer.

For Windows 7:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Select User Accounts and Family Safety.
- 3 Click User Accounts.
- 4 Click Change User Account Control Settings.
- 5 Move the slider to the bottom, and then click OK.
- 6 Click Yes in User Account Control dialog box.
- 7 Restart the computer.

Enable Network Discovery and File Sharing for all Public Networks



NOTE: This step is required when you use Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012 for the server computer.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel → Network and Internet → Network and Sharing Center → Change advanced sharing settings.
- 2 To allow your computer to be found on the network, and to allow other computers on the network to share the files and folders on your computer, click **Turn on network discovery**.
- 3 Click Save changes.
- 4 If you see the User Account Control dialog box, click Yes.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition:

- 1 Click Start → Network.
- 2 Right-click Network and select Properties.
The Network and Sharing Center screen appears.
- 3 Click the down arrow button next to either **Network discovery**.
- 4 To allow your computer to be found on the network, and to allow other computers on the network to share the files and folders on your computer, click **Turn on network discovery**.
- 5 Click Apply.
- 6 If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue.

Disable Simple File Sharing



NOTE: This step is required for Windows XP, and Windows XP 64-bit Edition.

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Select Appearance and Themes.
- 3 Select Folder Options.
- 4 On the View tab, clear the Use simple file sharing (Recommended) check box, and then click OK.
- 5 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 6 Select Performance and Maintenance.
- 7 Select Administrative Tools.
- 8 Double-click Local Security Policy.
- 9 Click Local Policies → Security Options.
- 10 Right-click Network access: Sharing and security model for local accounts and select Properties.

- 11 Ensure that **Classic - local users authenticate as themselves** is selected.
- 12 Click **OK**.

Installing the Printer Driver

 **NOTE:** Installation on Windows XP Home Edition, Windows Vista Home Basic, Windows Vista Home Premium, Windows Vista x64 Home Basic, Windows Vista x64 Home Premium, Windows 7 Starter, Windows 7 Home Basic, Windows 7 Home Premium, Windows 7 x64 Home Basic, and Windows 7 x64 Home Premium, Windows 8, Windows 8 x64, Windows 8 Pro, Windows 8 x64 Pro, and Windows Server 2012 is not supported.

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer in your computer. The **Dell Printer Setup** file launches automatically.
- 2 Click **Install Printer Driver and Software**.
The **Choose an installation type** screen appears.
- 3 Select **Network Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Select **Remote Installation**, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Enter the Administrator user name and password of the client computer, then select the clients or servers, and then click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** If you are running any of the following operating systems, a Windows Security Alert is displayed:

- Windows Vista
- Windows Vista 64-bit Edition
- Windows 7
- Windows 7 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition
- Windows Server 2008 R2 64-bit Edition

To continue installing the host-based printer driver, click **Unblock** or **Allow access** (for Windows Server 2008 R2 and Windows 7).

- 6 Check if the printer to be installed is listed in **Select Printer**, and then click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** If the printer to be installed is not listed in **Select Printer**, try the following steps:

- Click **Refresh** to update the information.
- Click **Add Printer**, and then enter a port name (any alphanumeric string of your choosing) and an existing IP address for the printer.

- 7 Select the required items on **Software and Documentation**, and then click **Install**.
- 8 Click **Finish** to exit this tool.

Setting Up for Web Services on Devices (WSD)

This section provides information for network printing with WSD, the protocol of Microsoft for Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012.

Adding Roles of Print Services

When you use Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2, you need to add the roles of print services to the Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 client.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.
- 3 Check the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Click **Next**.
- 5 Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Administrative Tools** → **Server Manager**.
- 2 Select **Add Roles** from the **Action** menu.
- 3 Check the **Print Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window in the **Add Roles Wizard**, and then click **Next**.
- 4 Check the **Print Server** check box, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Click **Install**.

For Windows Server 2012:

- 1 Click **Server Manager** of the **Start** screen.
- 2 Select **Add Roles and Features** from the **Manage** menu.
- 3 Click **Next** on the **Before You Begin** window → Select installation type on the **Installation Type** window → Select destination server on the **Server Selection** window in the **Add Roles and Features Wizard**.
- 4 Check the **Print and Document Services** check box on the **Server Roles** window, and then click **Next**.
- 5 Select features on the **Features** window → Confirm installation selections on the **Confirmation** window.
- 6 Click **Install**.

WSD Printer Setup

You can install your new printer on the network using Windows **Add Printer** wizard. When installing using the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer, see "Network Connection Setup" on page 68 for details.

 **NOTE:** Installing WSD printer for Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012 is available only with the **Add Printer** wizard.

Installing a Printer Driver Using the Add Printer Wizard

- 1 For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2:
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (**Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** for Windows Server 2008 and Windows Vista).

For Windows 8, Windows Server 2012:

Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.

- 2 Click **Add a printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**.
- 4 In the list of available printers, select the one you want to use, and then click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** In the list of available printers, the WSD printer is displayed in the form of **http://IP address/ws/**.

 **NOTE:** If no WSD printer is displayed in the list, enter the printer's IP address manually to create a WSD printer. To enter the printer's IP address manually, follow the instructions below. For Windows Server 2008 R2, to create a WSD printer, you must be a member of Administrators group.

1. Click **The printer that I want isn't listed**.
2. Select **Add a printer using a TCP/IP address or hostname** and click **Next**.
3. Select **Web Services Device** from **Device type**.
4. Enter the printer's IP address in the **Hostname or IP address** text box and click **Next**.

 **NOTE:** Before installing the driver using the **Add Printer** wizard on Windows Server 2008 R2 or Windows 7, perform one of the followings:

- Establish the Internet connection so that Windows Update can scan your computer.
- Add the printer driver to your computer in advance.

- 5 Install the printer driver on your computer. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
- 6 Complete the additional steps in the wizard, and then click **Finish**.
- 7 Print a test page to verify print installation.
 - a For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2:
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (**Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** for Windows Server 2008 and Windows Vista).

For Windows 8, Windows Server 2012:
Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
 - b Right-click the printer you just created, and then click **Printer properties** (**Properties** for Windows Server 2008 and Windows Vista).
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**. When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Setting Up for Shared Printing

You can share your new printer on the network using the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer, or using Windows Point and Print or peer-to-peer method. However, if you use either of the Microsoft methods you will not get features such as the status monitor and other printer utilities, which will get installed with the *Software and Documentation* disc.

If you want to use the printer on a network, share the printer and install its drivers on all the computers on the network.

 **NOTE:** You need to purchase the Ethernet cable separately for shared printing.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Right-click this printer icon and select **Properties**.
- 3 From the **Sharing** tab, check the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 4 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 5 Click **OK**.

If the files are not present in your computer, then you will be prompted to insert the server operating system CD.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.

- 3 Click **Change sharing options**.
- 4 The "Windows needs your permission to continue" appears.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 7 Select **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 8 Click **OK**.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start → Control Panel → Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Sharing**.
- 3 Click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.
- 4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 6 Click **OK**.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start → Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.
- 4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012

- 1 Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel → Hardware and Sound (Hardware for Windows Server 2012) → Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Right-click the printer icon and select **Printer properties**.
- 3 On the **Sharing** tab, click **Change Sharing Options** if exists.
- 4 Select the **Share this printer** check box, and then type a name in the **Share name** text box.
- 5 Click **Additional Drivers** and select the operating systems of all network clients using this printer.
- 6 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**.

To check that the printer is shared:

- Ensure that the printer object in the **Printers, Printers and Faxes, or Devices and Printers** folder is shared. The share icon is shown under the printer icon.
- Browse **Network or My Network Places**. Find the host name of the server and look for the shared name you assigned to the printer.

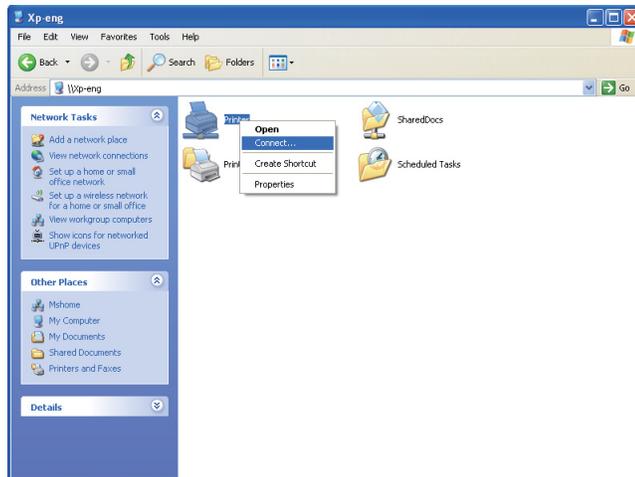
Now that the printer is shared, you can install the printer on network clients using the Point and Print method or the peer-to-peer method.

Point and Print

Point and Print is a Microsoft Windows technology that allows you to connect to a remote printer. This feature automatically downloads and installs the printer driver.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 On the Windows desktop of the client computer, double-click **My Network Places**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.



Wait for the driver information to be copied from the server computer to the client computer, and for a new printer object to be added to the **Printers and Faxes** folder. The time taken to copy varies based on the network traffic.

Close **My Network Places**.

- 4 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Settings** (for Windows XP / Windows XP 64-bit Edition) → **Printers and Faxes**.
 - b Select the printer you have installed.
 - c Click **File** → **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate and double-click the host name of the server computer.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Click **Continue** in **User Account Control** dialog box.

Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object is added to the **Printers** folder. The duration of this procedure may vary based on the network traffic.

- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound**.
 - b Select **Printers**.
 - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
 - b Select **Printers**.
 - c Right-click the printer you just created and select **Properties**.
 - d On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → your user name → **Network** (**Start** → **Network** for Windows Server 2008 R2).
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.
- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
 - b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012

- 1 Point to the bottom right corner of the screen, and then click **Search** → Type **Network** in the search box, click **Apps**, and then click **Network**.
- 2 Locate the host name of the server computer, and then double-click the host name.
- 3 Right-click the shared printer name, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Click **Install driver**.
- 5 Wait until the driver is copied from the server to the client computer. A new printer object will be added to the **Printers** folder. The time taken for these activities varies based on network traffic.

- 6 Print a test page to verify installation.
 - a Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
 - b Right-click the printer you just created and select **Printer properties**.
 - c On the **General** tab, click **Print Test Page**.

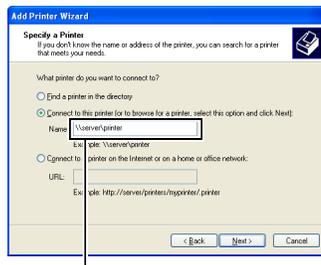
When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Peer-to-Peer

If you use the peer-to-peer method, the printer driver is installed on each client computer. The client computers can modify the drivers and handle the print jobs.

For Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition

- 1 Click **start** (**Start** for Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition) → **Settings** (for Windows XP / Windows XP 64-bit Edition) **Printers and Faxes**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer wizard**.
- 3 Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is not listed, type in the path of the printer in the text box.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

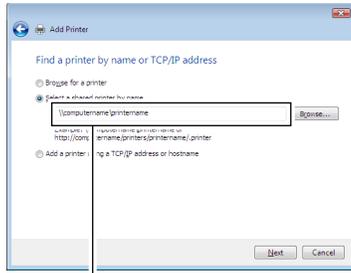
The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 5 Click **Browse for a printer**, and then click **Next**.
If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.
- 6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
If you want to verify installation, click **Yes** to print a test page.
- 7 Click **Finish**.
When a test page prints successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer wizard**.

- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.



For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 4 If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.
- 5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 6 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**, and then click **Next**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed** and type in the path of the printer in the **Select a shared printer by name** text box and click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it on the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 4 If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, specify the location where the driver is available.
- 5 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 6 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 7 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2

- 1 Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.

- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 4 If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.
- 5 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 7 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 8 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

For Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2012

- 1 Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** (**Hardware** for Windows Server 2012) → **Devices and Printers**.
- 2 Click **Add a Printer** to launch the **Add Printer** wizard.
- 3 Select **Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer**. If the printer is listed, select the printer and click **Next**, or select **The printer that I want isn't listed**. Click **Select a shared printer by name** and type in the path of the printer in the text box, and then click **Next**.

For example: \\<server host name>\<shared printer name>

The server host name is the name of the server computer that identifies it to the network. The shared printer name is the name assigned during the server installation process.

- 4 If this is a new printer, you may be prompted to install a printer driver. If no system driver is available, you need to specify the path to the available drivers.
- 5 Confirm the printer name, and then click **Next**.
- 6 Select **Yes** if you want this printer to be set as the default printer, and then click **Next**.
- 7 If you want to verify installation, click **Print a test page**.
- 8 Click **Finish**.

When a test page is printed successfully, installation is complete.

Installing Printer Drivers on Computers Running Macintosh

Installing the Drivers and Software

- 1 Run the *Software and Documentation* disc on the Macintosh computer.
- 2 Double-click the **Dell C1765 Installer** icon.
- 3 Click **Continue** on the **Introduction** screen.
- 4 Confirm the installation location, and then click **Continue**.
- 5 Click **Install** to perform the standard installation.
- 6 Type the administrator's name and password, and then click **Install Software**.
- 7 Click **Continue Installation**.
- 8 Click **Restart** to finish installing the software.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.5 or Later Version(s)

When Using a USB connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and Macintosh computer.
- 3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7).
- 4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default**.
- 5 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 6 Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.
- 3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7).
- 4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **Default** (Click the Plus (+) sign, and select the printer from **Nearby Printers**.
If there are no printers in **Nearby Printers**, select **Add Other Printer or Scanner** for Mac OS X 10.7).
- 5 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 6 Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.
- 3 Open the **System Preferences**, and click **Print & Fax** (**Print & Scan** for Mac OS X 10.7).
- 4 Click the Plus (+) sign, and click **IP**.
- 5 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 6 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.
- 7 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using**.
 **NOTE:** When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 8 Click **Add**.

Adding a Printer on Mac OS X 10.4.11

When Using a USB Connection

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Connect the USB cable between the printer and Macintosh computer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select the printer connected via USB from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

When Using Bonjour

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.
- 3 Start the **Printer Setup Utility**.
 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **Default Browser** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select the printer connected via Bonjour from the **Printer Name** list.
Name and **Print Using** are automatically entered.
- 7 Click **Add**.

When Using IP Printing

- 1 Turn on the printer.
- 2 Ensure that your Macintosh computer is connected to the network.
If you use wired connection, connect the Ethernet cable between the printer and the network.
If you use wireless connection, ensure that wireless connection is configured properly on your Macintosh computer and printer.
- 3 Start **Printer Setup Utility**.
 **NOTE:** You can find **Printer Setup Utility** in the **Utilities** folder in **Applications**.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Click **IP Printer** in the **Printer Browser** dialog box.
- 6 Select **Line Printer Daemon - LPD** for **Protocol**.
- 7 Type the IP address for the printer in the **Address** area.
- 8 Select the model of your printer for **Print Using**.
 **NOTE:** When the printing is set up using IP printing, the queue name is displayed as blank. You do not need to specify it.
- 9 Click **Add**.

Using Your Printer

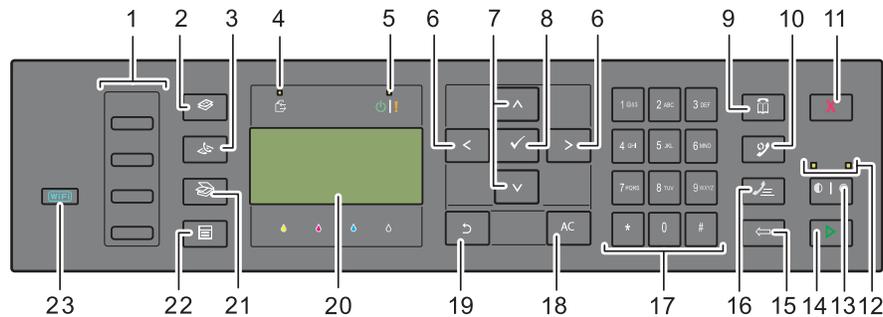
12 Operator Panel	91
13 Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool.....	97
14 Understanding the Tool Box Menus.....	139
15 Understanding the Printer Menus.....	163
16 Print Media Guidelines.....	203
17 Loading Print Media	211

Operator Panel

NOTE: The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Using the Operator Panel Buttons

The operator panel has a 4-line by 28-character liquid crystal display (LCD), light-emitting diodes (LED), control buttons, and numeric keypad, which allow you to control the printer.



- 1 One Touch Dial button
 - Calls up the stored Fax number registered in the Phone Book. The first four fax numbers in the Phone Book are assigned to the buttons in row order, starting from the top corner.
- 2  (Copy) button
 - Moves to the top level of the Copy menu.
- 3  (Fax) button
 - Moves to the top level of the Fax menu.
- 4 Data LED
 - Lights up for incoming, outgoing, or pending Fax jobs.
- 5 Ready / Error LED
 - Lights up when the printer is ready. (Ready LED)
 - Lights up when the printer has an error. (Error LED)
- 6  button
 - Moves a cursor or highlight right or left.
- 7  button
 - Moves a cursor or highlight up or down.
- 8  (Set) button
 - Confirms the entry of values.
- 9  (Contacts) button
 - Moves to the Address Book menu for the Fax and Scan services.
- 10  (Re-dial / Pause) button
 - Calls up the last telephone number the printer dialed.
 - Pauses a telephone number.

- 11  (Cancel) button
 - Cancels the current processing or pending job.
- 12 B&W / Color LED
 - Lights up to indicate which color mode is selected.
- 13  (Color Mode) button
 - Switches between color mode and black and white mode.
- 14  (Start) button
 - Starts the job.
- 15  (Backspace) button
 - Deletes characters and numbers.
- 16  (Speed Dial) button
 - Calls up a stored telephone number.
- 17 Numeric keypad
 - Enters characters and numbers.
- 18 AC (All Clear) button
 - Resets the current setting, and returns to the top menu.
- 19  (Back) button
 - Returns to the previous screen.
- 20 LCD Panel
 - Displays various settings, instructions, and error messages.
- 21  (Scan) button
 - Moves to the top level of the Scan menu.
- 22  (Menu) button
 - Moves to the top level of the Print From USB Memory, Job Status, and System menus.
- 23  (Wi-Fi | WPS) button (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)
 - Starts Wi-Fi Protected Setup[®] (Push Button Configuration). Lights up when it is activated, and blinks in certain conditions.

 **NOTE:** Moving to a different menu or returning to a previous screen cancels the current entry or setting. Make sure to press the  (Set) button to save the current entry or setting.

 **NOTE:** For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters" on page 94.

Status of Wi-Fi | WPS Button Backlight (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

This section describes when the backlight of the  (Wi-Fi | WPS) button lights up or blinks.

For more information, see "Wireless Problems (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)" on page 356.

Wi-Fi WPS Button Backlight	Wi-Fi settings ^{*1}	Printer Status	Error Message
 Off	N/A	Connected to the network via Ethernet cable; Wi-Fi settings is not available when an Ethernet cable is connected to the printer.	-
	Off	-	-
	On	The printer enters Sleep/Deep Sleep mode	-
 On	On	Wireless link established	-
 Blinking normal	On	Searching for wireless LAN access point or router	-
 Blinking slowly	On	Searching/Connecting with WPS access point or router during wireless operation	-
 Blinking fast	On	No wireless LAN access point or router found within the specified time	Wireless Error 016-920 System Setup Fail
	On	WPS Connection failure; Security setting of the wireless LAN access point or router is WEP, which is unsupported on WPS.	Wireless Error 016-921 System Setup Fail

*1 You can enable/disable the Wi-Fi settings. For more information, see "Wi-Fi (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)" on page 180.

Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter names and numbers. For example, when you set up your printer, you enter your name or your company name and telephone number. When you store speed dial or group dial numbers, you may also need to enter the corresponding names.



- When prompted to enter a letter, press the appropriate button until the correct letter appears on the display. For example, to enter the letter O, press 6.
 - Each time you press 6, the display shows a different letter, M, N, O and finally 6.
 - To enter additional letters, repeat the first step.
 - Press the ✓ (Set) button when you are finished.

Keypad Letters and Numbers

Key	Assigned numbers, letters or characters
1	@ : . / 1
2	a b c A B C 2
3	d e f D E F 3
4	g h i G H I 4
5	j k l J K L 5
6	m n o M N O 6
7	p q r s P Q R S 7
8	t u v T U V 8
9	w x y z W X Y Z 9
0	0
*	- _ ~
#	@ . ¥ _ ! " # \$ % & ' ~ ^ ` ; : ? , (space) + - * / = () [] { } < >

Changing Numbers or Names

If an incorrect name or number is entered, press the ← (Backspace) button to delete the last digit or character. Then enter the correct number or character.

Inserting a Pause

For some telephone systems, it is necessary to dial an access code and listen for a second dial tone. A pause must be entered in order for the access code to function. For example, enter the access code 9 and then press the ↻ (Redial/Pause) button before entering the telephone number. "-" appears on the display to indicate when a pause is entered.

Printing a Panel Settings Page

The panel settings page shows current settings for the printer menus. For details about how to print a panel settings report, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 163.

Changing the Language

To display a different language on the operator panel:

The Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Panel Language` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until the desired language is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

The Tool Box

- 1 Click `Start` → `All Programs` → `Dell Printers` → `Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer` → `Tool Box`.

 **NOTE:** For details about starting the Tool Box, see "Starting the Tool Box" on page 139.

The Tool Box opens.

- 2 Click the `Printer Maintenance` tab.
- 3 Select `System Settings` from the list at the left side of the page.
The `System Settings` page is displayed.
- 4 Select the desired language from `Panel Language`, and then click `Apply New Settings`.

Setting the Power Saving Timer Option

 **NOTE:** NOTE: A Password is required to enter the `Admin Menu` menu when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the  (Set) button.

You can set the power saving timer for the printer. The printer waits before it restores the default copy settings, if you do not start copying after changing them on the operator panel.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Ensure that `Power Saving Timer` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button to select `Sleep` or `Deep Sleep`, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.

You can select from 5–30 minutes for `Sleep` or 1–6 minutes for `Deep Sleep`.

- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

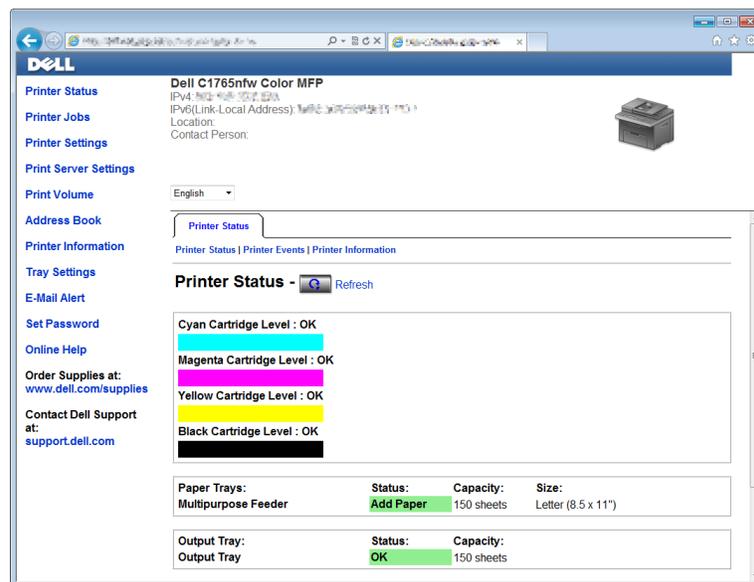
Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool

NOTE: The images used in this manual are those of the Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Overview

NOTE: This web tool is available only when the printer is connected to a network.

One of the features of the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool is the E-Mail Alert Setup, which sends an e-mail to you or the key operator when the printer needs supplies or intervention.



To fill out printer inventory reports requiring the asset tag number of all the printers in your area, use the **Printer Information** feature in the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool. Enter the IP address of each printer on the network to display the asset tag number.

The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool feature also allows you to change the printer settings and keep track of printing trends. If you are a network administrator, you can copy the printer settings to one or all printers on the network using your web browser.

Setting Up the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

Ensure that you activate JavaScript in your browser before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

It is recommended that you configure the environment settings of your web browser before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

NOTE: The Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool pages may be unreadable if the language differs from that of your web browser.

Setting Up From Web Browser

It is recommended that you configure both the environment settings of your web browser and the operator panel before using the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

For Internet Explorer®

Setting Up the Display Language

- 1 Select **Internet Options** from **Tools** on the menu bar.
- 2 Select **Languages** in the **General** tab.
- 3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Language** list.

For example:

- **Italian (Italy)** [it-IT]
- **Spanish (Traditional Sort)** [es-ES tradnl]
- **German (Germany)** [de-DE]
- **French (France)** [fr-FR]
- **English (United States)** [en-us]
- **Danish** [da-DK]
- **Dutch (Netherlands)** [nl-NL]
- **Norwegian (Bokmal)** [no]
- **Swedish** [sv-SE]

Setting the IP Address of the printer to Non-Proxy

- 1 Select **Internet Options** from the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Click **LAN Settings** under **Local Area Network (LAN)** settings in the **Connections** tab.
- 3 You can configure the LAN settings in one of the following ways:
 - Clear the **Use a proxy server for your LAN** check box under **Proxy server**.
 - Click **Advanced**, and then specify the IP address of your printer in the **Do not use proxy server for addresses beginning with** field under **Exceptions**.

After setting the language and proxy, enter `<http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/>` (the IP address of your printer) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

For Firefox®

Setting Up the Display Language

- 1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Click **Choose** in the **Content** tab.
- 3 Specify the display language in order of preference in the **Languages in order of preference** list.

For example:

- **English** [en] or **English/United States** [en-us]
- **Italian** [it]
- **Spanish** [es]
- **German** [de]
- **French** [fr]
- **Dutch** [nl]
- **Norwegian** [no]
- **Swedish** [sv]
- **Danish** [da]

Setting the IP Address of the printer to Non-Proxy

- 1 Select **Options** from the **Tools** menu.
- 2 Click **Advanced** tab.
- 3 Click **Network** on the **Options** dialog box.
- 4 Click **Connection** → **Settings**.
- 5 You can configure the LAN settings in one of the following ways:
 - Select the **No Proxy** check box, if you do not want to use a proxy.
 - Select the **Auto-detect proxy settings for this network** check box.
 - Select the **Manual proxy configuration:** check box, and then enter a hostname and a port number if you have a list of one or more proxy servers. If you have an IP address that does not use a proxy, enter the IP address of your printer in the **No Proxy for:** edit box.
 - Select the **Automatic proxy configuration URL:** check box.

After setting the language and proxy, enter <http://nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn/> (the IP address of your printer) in the URL entry field of the browser to activate the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

Setting Up From Operator Panel

You can launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** only when EWS is set to **Enable** (the factory default) on the operator panel. Check the operator panel setting if you cannot launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For more information, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 163.

Starting the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

To launch the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, enter the IP address of your printer in your web browser.



If you do not know the IP address of your printer, print the printer settings report or display the **TCP/IP Settings** page, which lists the IP address. For details about how to find your printer's IP address, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 55.

Overview of the Menu Items

Use the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** for:

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to get feedback on the printer status. When a toner cartridge is running low, click the **order supplies** link on the first screen to order an additional toner cartridge.

Printer Jobs

Use the **Printer Jobs** menu to contain information on the **Job List** page and **Completed Jobs** page. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or job.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to change printer settings and view the settings in the operator panel remotely.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to change the type of printer interface and necessary conditions for communications.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** option to check the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Address Book

Use the **Address Book** menu to view or edit the e-mail address, phone number, server address, and fax number entries in the Address Book, or to register new entries.

Printer Information

Use the **Printer Information** menu to display the information of your printer.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to get information about the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

E-Mail Alert

Use the **E-Mail Alert** menu to receive an e-mail when the printer needs supplies or intervention. Enter your name or the key operator name in the e-mail list box to be notified. Set **E-Mail Alert** also when using the **Scan to E-mail** feature.

Set Password

Use the Set Password menu to lock the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** with a password so that other users do not inadvertently change the printer settings you selected.

 **NOTE:** You must log in as an administrator to use this feature.

Online Help

Click **Online Help** to visit the Dell Support web site.

Order Supplies at:

www.dell.com/supplies

Contact Dell Support at:

support.dell.com

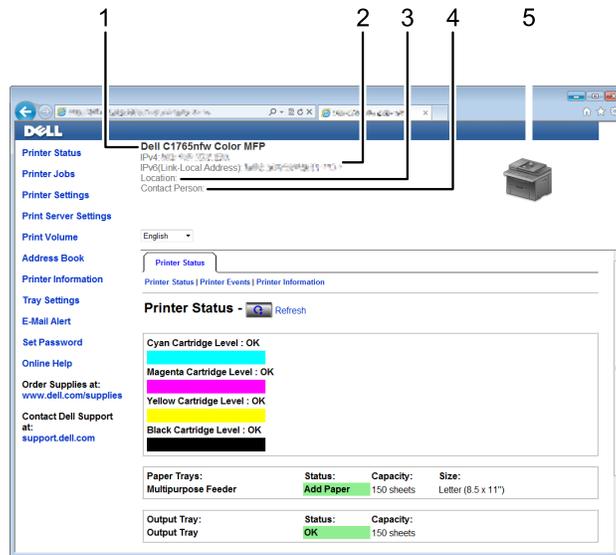
Page Display Format

The layout of the page is divided into three sections.

Top Frame

The top frame is located on the top of all pages. When the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** is activated, the current status and specifications of the printer are displayed in the top frame on every page.

The following items are displayed in the top frame.

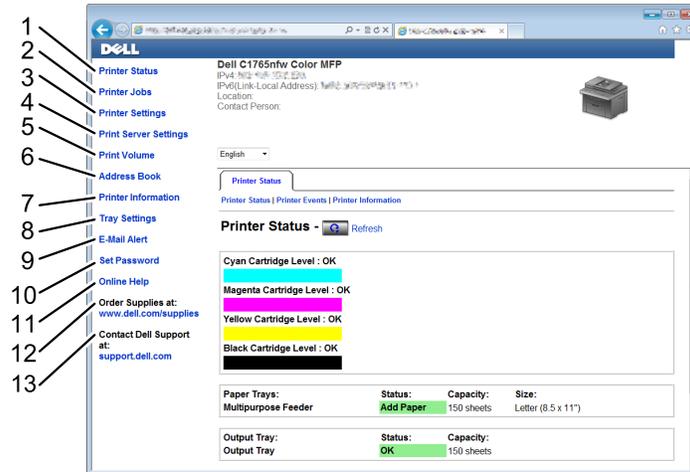


1	Dell C1765nfw Color MFP	Displays the printer model name.
2	IP Address	Displays the IP address of your printer.
3	Location	Displays the location of the printer. The location can be changed in the Basic Information on the Print Server Settings page.
4	Contact Person	Displays the administrator name of the printer. The name can be changed in the Basic Information on the Print Server Settings page.
5	Printer Bitmap	Shows the bitmap image of the printer. The Printer Status menu appears in the right frame when you click the image.

Left Frame

The left frame is located on the left side of all pages. The menu titles displayed in the left frame are linked to corresponding menus and pages. You can go to the corresponding page by clicking their characters.

The following menus are displayed in the left frame.

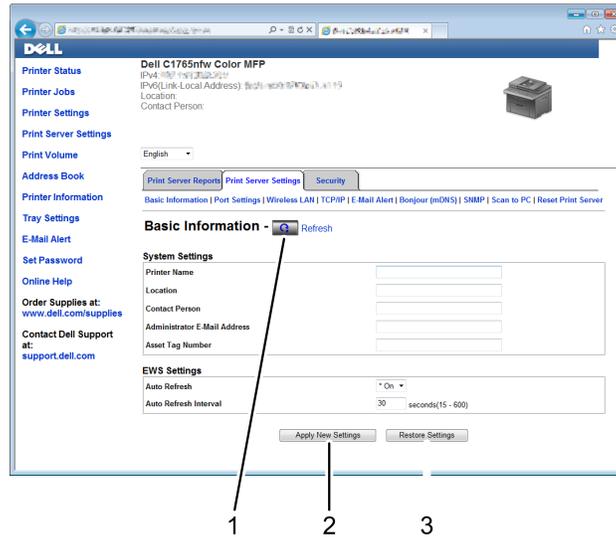


1	Printer Status	Links to the Printer Status menu.
2	Printer Jobs	Links to the Printer Jobs menu.
3	Printer Settings	Links to the Printer Settings Report menu.
4	Print Server Settings	Links to the Print Server Reports menu.
5	Print Volume	Links to the Print Volume menu
6	Address Book	Links to the Address Book menu.
7	Printer Information	Links to the Printer Status menu.
8	Tray Settings	Links to the Tray Settings menu.
9	E-Mail Alert	Links to the Print Server Settings menu.
10	Set Password	Links to the Security menu.
11	Online Help	Links to the Dell Support website.
12	Order Supplies at:	Links to the Dell web page.
13	Contact Dell Support at:	Links to the Dell support page web address: support.dell.com

Right Frame

The right frame is located on the right side of all pages. The contents of the right frame correspond to the menu that you select in the left frame. For details on the items displayed in the right frame, see "Details of the Menu Items" on page 104.

Buttons in the Right Frame



1	Refresh button	Receives the current printer configuration and updates the latest information in the right frame.
2	Apply New Settings button	Submits new settings made on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool to the printer. The new settings replace the old settings of the printer.
3	Restore Settings button	Restores the old settings. New settings will not be submitted to the printer.

Changing the Settings of the Menu Items

Some menus allow you to change the printer settings through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. When you access these menus, the authentication window appears on the screen. Enter a user name and password of the administrator by following the prompts displayed in the dialog box.

The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is left blank (NULL). You can change only the password in the **Set Password** page in the **Security** menu. For more information, see "Set Password" on page 132.

Details of the Menu Items

"Printer Status"	"Printer Status"		
	"Printer Events"		
	"Printer Information"		
"Printer Jobs"	"Job List"		
	"Completed Jobs"		
"Printer Settings"	"Printer Settings Report"		
	"Menu Settings"		
	"Reports"		
	"Printer Settings"	"System Settings"	
		"Secure Settings"	
		"Copy Defaults"	
		"Copy Color Balance"	
		"Copy Settings"	
		"Scan Defaults"	
		"Fax Defaults"	
		"Fax Settings"	
		"Printer Maintenance"	"Paper Density"
			"Adjust Transfer Roller"
	"Adjust Fusing Unit"		
"Auto Registration Adjustment"			
"Color Registration Adjustment"			
"Clean Developer"			
"Adjust Altitude"			
"Reset Defaults"			
"Non-Dell Toner"			
"Clock Settings"			
"Web Link Customization"			

"Print Server Settings"	"Print Server Reports"	"Print Server Setup Page"	
		"E-Mail Alert Setup Page"	
	"Print Server Settings"		"Basic Information"
			"Port Settings"
			"Wireless LAN (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)" ^{*1}
			"TCP/IP"
			"E-Mail Alert"
			"Bonjour (mDNS)"
			"SNMP"
			"Scan to PC"
			"Reset Print Server"
		"Security"	
			"IP Filter (IPv4)"
"Print Volume"		"Print Volume"	
"Address Book"	"Fax/E-Mail"	"Address Book - Top Page"	
		"Address Book (Confirm/Change, Create)"	
		"Address Book (Delete)"	
		"FAX Group - Top Page"	
		"FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)"	
		"FAX Group (Delete)"	
		"E-Mail Group - Top Page"	
		"E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)"	
		"E-Mail Group (Delete)"	
		"E-Mail Default Setup"	
	"Server Address"	"Server Address - Top Page"	
		"Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)"	
		"Server Address (Delete)"	
"Tray Settings"			

*1 This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

Printer Status

Use the **Printer Status** menu to check the status of consumables, hardware, and specifications of the printer. The following pages are displayed in the **Printer Status** menu.

Printer Status

Purpose:

To check the status of the consumables and trays.

Values:

Cyan Cartridge Level			Displays the percentage of toner remaining in each toner cartridge.
Magenta Cartridge Level			When a cartridge is empty, a message appears. The text <i>Call or Order</i> is linked to the Dell Printer Supplies website.
Yellow Cartridge Level			
Black Cartridge Level			
Paper Trays	Status	Ready	Indicates that there is some paper in the tray but the quantity is unknown.
		Add Paper	Indicates that there is no paper in the tray.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the paper tray.
Output Tray	Status	OK	Indicates that the tray is available.
	Capacity		Displays the maximum capacity of the output tray.
Cover	Status	Closed	Indicates that the cover is closed.
		Open	Indicates that the cover is open.
Printer Type			Displays the type of the printer. Color Laser is displayed normally.
Printing Speed			Displays the printing speed.

Printer Events

Purpose:

When faults such as *Out of Paper* or *Rear Cover is Open* occur, the details of all alerts or indications of faults are displayed in the **Printer Events** page.

Values:

Location	Displays the location where the error occurred.
Details	Displays the details of the error.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the system information of the printer. This page can also be displayed by clicking **Printer Information** in the left frame.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays Dell's service tag number.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag number of the printer.

Printer Serial Number		Displays the serial number of the printer.
Memory Capacity		Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed		Displays the processing speed.
Printer Revision Levels	Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
	Network Firmware Version	Displays the NIC version.

Printer Jobs

The **Printer Jobs** menu contains information on the **Job List** and **Completed Jobs** pages. These pages show the details of the status regarding each protocol or the print jobs.

Job List

Purpose:

To confirm the print jobs that are being processed. Click **Refresh** to update the screen.

Values:

ID		Displays the job ID.
Job Name		Displays the file name of the job being printed.
Owner		Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name		Displays the name of the host computer.
Job Status		Displays the status of the job being printed.
Job Type		Displays the type of the job.
Host I/F		Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time		Displays the date when the print job was submitted.

Completed Jobs

Purpose:

To check the completed jobs. Up to 20 latest jobs are displayed. Click **Refresh** to update the screen.

Values:

ID		Displays the job ID.
Job Name		Displays the file name of the job.
Owner		Displays the name of the job owner.
Host Name		Displays the name of the host computer.
Output Result		Displays the status of the job.
Job Type		Displays the type of the job.
Impression Number		Displays the total number of pages used by the print job.
No. of Sheets		Displays the total number of sheets used by the print job.
Host I/F		Displays the status of the host interface.
Job Submitted Time		Displays the date when the job was submitted.

Printer Settings

Use the **Printer Settings** menu to display the **Printer Settings Report** and to configure the printer settings. The following tabbed pages are displayed at the top of the right frame.

Printer Settings Report

The **Printer Settings Report** tab contains the **Menu Settings** and **Reports** pages.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of your printer.

Values:

System Settings	Power Saver Timer - Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer - sleep after it finishes a job.
	Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer - deep sleep after it goes into the power saver timer mode 1.
	Auto Reset	Displays the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Panel Select Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Panel Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Job Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job is complete. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. Off indicates that all the tones are disabled.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Panel Language	Displays the language used on the operator panel.
	Disable printing with larger paper size	Displays whether to disable printing if the paper size set in the printer driver and the paper size set in the tray of the printer does not match (the paper set in the tray is larger).
	Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
mm/inch	Displays the measurement unit used after the numeric value on the operator panel.	

Secure Settings	Panel Lock Set	Displays whether to limit access to Admin Menu with a password.
	Software Download	Displays whether to enable download of firmware updates.
	Copy Service Lock Set	Displays whether to enable the Copy service or to require a password to use the service.
	Scan Service Lock Set	Displays whether to enable the Scan service or to require a password to use the service.
	Fax Service Lock Set	Displays whether to enable the Fax service or to require a password to use the service.
	Print from USB	Displays whether to enable the USB-Print service or to require a password to use the service.
	Secure Receive Set	Displays whether to require a password to print incoming faxes.
Copy Defaults	Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Type	Displays the default document type.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
Copy Color Balance	Color Balance (Red)	Displays the color balance level of red.
	Color Balance (Green)	Displays the color balance level of green.
	Color Balance (Blue)	Displays the color balance level of blue.
	Gray Balance	Displays the gray balance level.
Copy Settings	Multiple-Up	Displays whether to enable the Multiple-Up feature.
	Collated	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.

Scan Defaults	Scan To Network	Displays whether to store scanned image on a network server or on a computer.
	File Format	Displays the file format to save the scanned image.
	Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the selected TIFF file format; TIFF V6 or TTN2.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
	Max E-Mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
Fax Defaults	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default density level to be used for fax transmission.
	Delayed Start	Displays the fax transmission start time.
Fax Settings	Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
	Auto Receive Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
	Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
	Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax .
	Line Type	Displays the line type.
	Tone/Pulse	Displays the dialing type.
	Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
	Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
	Redial Delay	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
	Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
	Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
	Remote Receive Tone	Displays the remote receive code to start Remote Receive.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.	
Fax Header Name	Displays the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes.	

	Fax Number	Displays the fax number to be printed on the header of faxes.
	Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
	DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
	Sent Fax Forward	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Fax Forward Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
	Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
	Prefix Dial Number	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
	Discard Size	Displays whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
	ECM	Displays whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM).
	Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed.
	Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
	Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
	Fax Protocol	Displays whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
	Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.
Paper Density	Plain	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust Transfer Roller	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for thick plain paper.
	Covers	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for cover paper.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for labels.
	Coated	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for coated paper.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for recycled paper.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for envelopes.
Adjust Fusing Unit	Plain	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for thick plain paper.
	Covers	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for cover paper.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for labels.
	Coated	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for coated paper.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for recycled paper.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the fusing unit for envelopes.
Auto Registration Adjustment		Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Clock Settings	Date Format	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; 24H or 12 Hour Clock .
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Web Link Customization	Select Reorder URL	Displays a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from Order Supplies at: in the left frame.
	Regular	Displays the regular web address (http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna) that can be linked to Order Supplies at: in the left frame.
	Premier	Displays the premier web address (http://premier.dell.com) that can be linked to Order Supplies at: in the left frame.
Tray Settings	MPF Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
	MPF Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	MPF Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
	Display Popup	Displays whether to use a popup menu that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of your printer.

Values:

System Settings	Click Start to print the system settings page.
Panel Settings	Click Start to print the panel settings page.
Job History	Click Start to print the Job History report.
Error History	Click Start to print the Error History report.
Address Book	Click Start to print the Address Book report.
Color Test Page	Click Start to print the Color Test Page.

Printer Settings

The Printer Settings tab contains the System Settings, Secure Settings, Copy Defaults, Copy Color Balance, Copy Settings, Scan Defaults, Fax Defaults, and Fax Settings pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic printer settings.

Values:

Power Saver Timer - Sleep ^{*1}	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer mode 1 after it finishes a job.
Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters the power saver timer mode 2 after it goes into the power saver timer mode 1.
Auto Reset	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
Panel Select Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct, or disables the tone.
Panel Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect, or disables the tone.
Job Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job is complete, or disables the tone.
Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs, or disables the tone.
Out of Paper Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper, or disables the tone.
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Sets the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear, or disables the tone.
All Tones	Sets the volume of all the alert tones, or disables all the tones.
Job Time-Out	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.
Panel Language	Used to set the language on the operator panel.
Disable printing with larger paper size ^{*2}	Specifies whether to print jobs if the paper set in the tray of the printer is larger than the paper size set in the printer driver (the paper size does not have to match).
Auto Log Print	Specifies if a job history needs to be printed after every 20 jobs.
mm/inch ^{*3}	Specifies the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

*1 Enter 5 in **Power Saver Timer - Sleep** to put the printer in the power saver timer mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 5 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver timer mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

*2 **Disable printing with larger paper size** is available only in the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** and the **Tool Box**.

*3 The default for **mm/inch** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Secure Settings

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To restrict access to Admin Menu with a password, and to set or change the password.

 **NOTE:** This menu sets a password to lock the operator panel. When you change the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** on the left frame and set the password.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Restricts access to Admin Menu with a password.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to access Admin Menu.
Re-enter Password	Enter the new password again to confirm.

Software Download

Purpose:

To set whether to enable download of software updates.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To enable the services to be password-enabled, and allow the user to change it.

 **NOTE:** This menu sets a password to limit the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB-Print services. When you change the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** you change on the left frame and set the password.

Values:

Copy Service Lock Set	Allows you to set a password for the Copy Service feature.
Scan Service Lock Set	Allows you to set a password for the Scan Service feature.
Fax Service Lock Set	Allows you to set a password for the Fax Service feature.
Print from USB	Allows you to set a password for the USB-Print Service feature.
New Password	Sets a password required to use the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB-Print services.
Re-enter Password	Enter the new password again to confirm.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

Allows you to set a password to secure the incoming faxes. When the Secure Receive feature is enabled, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.

 **NOTE:** This menu sets a password to lock printing incoming fax. When changing the password for the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, click **Set Password** on the left frame and set the password.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Allows you to set a password to secure the incoming faxes.
New Password	Sets a password that is required to print incoming faxes.
Re-enter Password	Enter the new password again to confirm.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default copy settings.

Values:

Color	Selects mode for color or black and white copying.
Reduce/Enlarge	Sets the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Sets a custom reduction/enlargement ratio within the range of 25% to 400% when Reduce/Enlarge is set to Custom .
Original Type	Sets the copy image quality.
Document Size	Sets the default document size.
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default copy density level.
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Copy Color Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level.

Values:

Color Balance (Red)	Sets the color balance level of red.
Color Balance (Green)	Sets the color balance level of green.
Color Balance (Blue)	Sets the color balance level of blue.
Gray Balance	Sets the gray balance level.

Copy Settings

Purpose:

To configure the copy settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Multiple-Up	Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge .
Collated		Sets whether to sort the copy job.
Margin Top/Bottom		Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.
Margin Left/Right		Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.
Margin Middle		Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default scan settings.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Scan To Network	Computer (Network)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
	Server (FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.
File Format	Sets the file format to save the scanned image.	
Color	Sets whether to scan in color or in black and white.	
Resolution	Sets the default scan resolution.	
Document Size	Sets the default document size.	
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default scan density level.	
Sharpness	Sets the default sharpness level.	
Auto Exposure	Sets whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.	
Margin Top/Bottom	Sets the value of the top and bottom margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.	
Margin Left/Right	Sets the value of the left and right margins within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.	
Margin Middle	Sets the value of the middle margin within the range of 0 mm to 50 mm/0.0 to 2.0 inch.	
TIFF File Format	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6 or TTN2.	
Image Compression	Sets the image compression level.	
Max E-Mail Size	Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.	

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default fax settings.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
	Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
Lighter/Darker	Sets the default density level to be used for fax transmission.	
Delayed Start	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.	

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic fax settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the remote receive code.
	Fax*	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Receive Fax/Tel , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Answer Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Receive Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Tel/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Receive Answer/Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.	
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax .	
Line Type	Sets the line type.	
Tone/Pulse	Sets the dialing type.	
Resend Delay	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.	
Redial Attempts	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.	
Redial Delay	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.	
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.	
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Receive Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive .	
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.	
Fax Header Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.	

Fax Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from Pattern 1 to Pattern 7 . DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.
Sent Fax Forward	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Forward Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Number	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting Auto Reduction automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Sets whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.

Printer Maintenance

The **Printer Maintenance** tab contains the **Paper Density**, **Adjust Transfer Roller**, **Adjust Fusing Unit**, **Auto Registration Adjustment**, **Color Registration Adjustment**, **Clean Developer**, **Adjust Altitude**, **Reset Defaults**, **Non-Dell Toner**, **Clock Settings**, and **Web Link Customization** pages.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Sets the paper density of plain paper.
Label	Sets the paper density of labels.

Adjust Transfer Roller

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller. To decrease the voltage, set negative values. To increase the voltage, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Plain Thick	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Label	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for labels within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Recycled	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Envelope	Sets the reference voltage setting for the transfer roller for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.

Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To decrease the temperature, set negative values. To increase the temperature, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to decrease the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Plain Thick	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for thick plain paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Covers	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for cover paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Label	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for labels within the range of -3 to 3.
Coated	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for coated paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Recycled	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for recycled paper within the range of -3 to 3.
Envelope	Sets the temperature settings for the fusing unit for envelopes within the range of -3 to 3.

Auto Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically adjust color registration.

Color Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To automatically adjust color registration.

Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

 **NOTE:** The **Color Registration Adjustment** feature can be configured when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

Values:

Auto Correct	Click Start to automatically correct color registration.
Color Registration Adjustment 1 (Lateral)	Specifies lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for Y (Yellow), M (Magenta), C (Cyan) within the range of -5 to +5.
Color Registration Adjustment 2 (Process)	Specifies process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually for LY (Left Yellow), LM (Left Magenta), LC (Left Cyan), RY (Right Yellow), RM (Right Magenta), and RC (Right Cyan) within the range of -5 to +5.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge, to use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Clean Developer	Click Start to stir the toner in the toner cartridge.
Yellow Toner Refresh	Click Start to clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta Toner Refresh	Click Start to clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan Toner Refresh	Click Start to clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black Toner Refresh	Click Start to clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

 **NOTE:** An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

0 meter*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000 meters	
2000 meters	
3000 meters	

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) memory for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

Values:

Reset Defaults and Restart Printer	Click Start to initialize the system parameters.
Reset Defaults of User (Fax) Section	Click Start to initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
Reset Defaults of User (Scan) Section	Click Start to initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

 **NOTE:** Using non-Dell-brand toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

 **NOTE:** Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Clock Settings

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Date Format ^{*1}	<u>yy/mm/dd</u> <u>mm/dd/yy</u> <u>dd/mm/yy</u>	Specifies the date format.
Time Format	<u>12 Hour Clock</u> [*] <u>24H</u>	Specifies the time format.
Time Zone		Specifies the time zone.
Set Date		Specifies the current date.
Set Time		Specifies the current time.

^{*1} The default for **Date Format** varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables, which can be accessed from **Order Supplies at:** in the left frame.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Select the Regular or Premier web address to be linked to Order Supplies at: in the left frame.
Regular	Displays the regular web address (http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna) that can be linked to Order Supplies at: in the left frame.
Premier	Displays the premier web address (http://premier.dell.com) that can be linked to Order Supplies at: in the left frame.

Print Server Settings

Use the **Print Server Settings** menu to set the type of printer interface and necessary conditions for communications.

The following tabbed pages are displayed in the top of the right frame.

Print Server Reports

The **Print Server Reports** tab contains the **Print Server Setup Page** and **E-Mail Alert Setup Page**.

Print Server Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) and printing ports. On this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

Ethernet ^{*1}	Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current Ethernet settings.
	MAC Address	Displays the Media Access Control (MAC) address of the printer.
Wireless ^{*2}	Wireless LAN	Displays whether to enable wireless connection.
	SSID	Displays the name that identifies the network.
	Network Type	Displays the network type from either the Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure mode.
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless printer setting.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the connection.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the connection.
	Encryption	Displays the security method.
Transmit Key	Displays the transmit key.	

TCP/IP Settings	Host Name	Displays the host name.		
	IP Mode	Displays the IP mode.		
	IPv4	IP Address Mode	Displays the IP address mode.	
		IP Address	Displays the IP address.	
		Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.	
		Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.	
	IPv6	Use Manual Address	Displays the manual IP address.	
		Manual Address	Displays the IP address.	
		Stateless Address 1-3	Displays the stateless addresses.	
		Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.	
Manual Gateway Address		Displays the gateway address.		
Auto Configure Gateway Address		Displays the gateway address.		
DNS	IPv4	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Displays if the printer receives the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.	
		Manual DNS Server Address	Displays the DNS server address.	
	IPv6	Manual DNS Server Address	Displays the DNS server address.	
LPD	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
Bonjour (mDNS)	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
Port9100	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
	Port Number	Displays the port number.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
HTTP	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
	Port Number	Displays the port number.		
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the number of connections received simultaneously by the client.		
	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
WSD	Port Status	Displays the WSD (Web Services on Devices) port status.		
	Port Number	Displays the WSD port number.		
	Receive Time-Out	Displays the receive time-out period.		
	Notification Time-Out	Displays the notification time-out period.		
	Maximum Number of TTL	Displays the maximum number of TTLs.		
	Maximum Number of Notification	Displays the maximum number of notifications.		
SNMP	Port Status	Displays the port status.		
FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		
	FTP Passive	Displays whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.		
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Displays the connection time-out period.		

*1 This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

*2 This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wireless network.

E-Mail Alert Setup Page

Purpose:

To verify the current settings of SMTP/POP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol/Post Office Protocol) used for the e-mail feature and e-mail alert feature. In this page, you can only verify the settings of items. If you want to change the settings, go to the pages in the **Print Server Settings** tab.

Values:

E-Mail Alert Setup Page	Port Status	Displays the port status.	
	Primary SMTP Gateway	Displays the primary SMTP gateway.	
	SMTP Port Number	Displays the SMTP port number.	
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Displays the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.	
	POP3 Server Address	Displays the POP3 server address.	
	POP3 Port Number	Displays the POP3 port number.	
	Reply Address	Displays the reply e-mail address sent with each e-mail alert.	
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.	
E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1	Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the e-mail alert feature specified in E-Mail List 1 .	
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.
	E-Mail List 2	Displays the acceptable e-mail addresses for the e-mail alert feature specified in E-Mail List 2 .	
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for paper handling.
		Service Call	Displays the e-mail alert receive status for service calls.

Print Server Settings

The Print Server Settings tab contains the **Basic Information**, **Port Settings**, **Wireless LAN**, **TCP/IP**, **E-Mail Alert**, **Bonjour (mDNS)**, **SNMP**, **Scan To PC**, and **Reset Print Server** pages.

Basic Information

Purpose:

To configure the basic information of the printer.



NOTE: The **Auto Refresh** feature is effective for the contents of the top frame, **Printer Status page**, **Job List page**, and **Completed Jobs page**.

Values:

System Settings	Printer Name	Specifies the name of the printer using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Location	Specifies the location of the printer using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Contact Person	Specifies the contact name, number, and other information of the administrator and service center using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Administrator E-Mail Address	Specifies the contact address of the administrator and service center using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
	Asset Tag Number	Enter the asset tag number for the printer.
EWS Settings	Auto Refresh	Automatically refreshes the contents of the status display pages.
	Auto Refresh Interval	Sets the time interval for refreshing the contents of the status display pages automatically from 15 to 600 seconds.

Port Settings

Purpose:

To enable or disable printing connectors and management protocol features.



NOTE: The settings in the **Port Settings** page will be valid only when the printer is rebooted. When you change or configure the settings, click **Apply new settings** to apply the new settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Ethernet ^{*1}	Ethernet Settings	Auto [*]	Detects Ethernet transmission rate and the duplex settings automatically.
		10Base-T Half-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Half-Duplex as the default value.
		10Base-T Full-Duplex	Selects 10Base-T Full-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Half-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Half-Duplex as the default value.
		100Base-TX Full-Duplex	Selects 100Base-TX Full-Duplex as the default value.
	Current Ethernet Settings	Displays the current settings of Ethernet.	
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the printer.	
Port Status	LPD	Specifies whether to enable LPD.	
	Port9100	Specifies whether to enable Port9100.	
	E-Mail Alert	Specifies whether to enable the E-Mail Alert feature.	
	SNMP	Specifies whether to enable the SNMP.	
	WSD	Specifies whether to enable the WSD port.	
	Bonjour (mDNS)	Specifies whether to enable the Bonjour (mDNS) feature.	
	Status Messenger	Specifies whether to enable the Status Messenger.	

^{*1} This item is available only when the printer is connected with a wired network.

Wireless LAN (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Purpose:

To configure wireless network settings.

To connect the printer with a wireless network, be sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable.

 **NOTE:** Once wireless LAN is activated, wired LAN protocol will be disabled.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Values:

Wireless Settings	Wireless LAN	Specifies whether to enable wireless connection.
	SSID	Specifies the name that identifies the wireless network using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
	Network Type	Specifies the network type from either Ad-Hoc or Infrastructure .
	MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the wireless network setting of the printer.
	Link Channel	Displays the channel number of the wireless connection of the printer.
	Link Quality	Displays the quality of the wireless network connection of the printer.
Security Settings	Encryption	Select the security method from the list.
	No Security*	Specifies No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP, WPA-PSK TKIP/WPA2-PSK AES, and Mixed Mode PSK.
	WEP 64 Bit ASCII (5 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 64 Bit ASCII to use through the wireless network.
	WEP 128 Bit ASCII (13 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 128 Bit ASCII to use through the wireless network.
	WEP 64 Bit Hex (10 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 64 Bit Hex to use through the wireless network.
	WEP 128 Bit Hex (26 Bytes)	Specifies the WEP 128 Bit Hex to use through the wireless network.
	WPA-PSK TKIP* ¹	Specifies the WPA-PSK TKIP to use through the wireless network.
	WPA2-PSK AES* ¹	Specifies the WPA2-PSK AES to use through the wireless network.
Mixed Mode PSK	Specifies the Mixed Mode PSK to use through the wireless network.	

WEP Key 1	Enter the WEP key when WEP is selected from Encryption .
Re-enter WEP Key 1	Enter the WEP key 1 again to confirm.
WEP Key 2	Enter the WEP key when WEP is selected from Encryption .
Re-enter WEP Key 2	Enter the WEP key 2 again to confirm.
WEP Key 3	Enter the WEP key when WEP is selected from Encryption .
Re-enter WEP Key 3	Enter the WEP key 3 again to confirm.
WEP Key 4	Enter the WEP key when WEP is selected from Encryption .
Re-enter WEP Key 4	Enter the WEP key 4 again to confirm.
Transmit Key	Specifies the transmit key type from the list.
Pass Phrase	Specifies the passphrase.
Re-enter Pass Phrase	Enter the passphrase again to confirm.

*1 This item is available only when the Infrastructure mode is selected for Network Type.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address of the printer.

Values:

TCP/IP Settings	Host Name	Specifies the host name.		
	IP Mode	Specifies the IP mode.		
	IPv4	IP Address Mode	Selects the IP address mode.	
		Manual IP Address	Manually sets the IP address.	
		Manual Subnet Mask	Manually sets the subnet mask.	
		Manual Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.	
		Use Manual Address	To set the IP address manually.	
	IPv6	Manual Address	Manually sets the IP address. To specify an IPv6 address, enter the address followed by a slash (/) and then "64". For details, consult your system administrator.	
		Stateless Address 1-3	Displays the stateless addresses.	
		Link Local Address	Displays the link local address.	
		Manual Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.	
		Auto Configure Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.	

DNS	DNS Domain Name	Specifies the domain name of the domain name server. Up to 255 alphanumeric characters, periods, and hyphens can be used. If you need to specify more than one domain name, separate them using a comma or semicolon.				
	IPv4	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Get DNS Server Address from DHCP</td> <td>Specifies whether to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Manual DNS Server Address</td> <td>Sets the DNS server address.</td> </tr> </table>	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Specifies whether to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.	Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.
	Get DNS Server Address from DHCP	Specifies whether to get the DNS server address automatically from the DHCP server.				
Manual DNS Server Address	Sets the DNS server address.					
IPv6	Manual DNS Server Address Sets the DNS server address.					
LPD	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 1000 seconds.				
	IP Filter (IPv4)	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.				
Port9100	Port Number	Sets the port number from 9000 to 9999.				
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period between 1 and 1000 seconds.				
	IP Filter (IPv4)	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.				
HTTP	Port Number	Sets the port number. This must be 80 or between 8000 and 9999.				
	Simultaneous Connections	Displays the maximum number of connections received simultaneously by the client.				
	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 255 seconds.				
WSD	Port Number	Sets the port number. This must be 80 or between 8000 and 9999.				
	Receive Time-Out	Sets the receive time-out period from 1 to 65535 seconds.				
	Notification Delivery Time-Out	Sets the notification time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.				
	Maximum Number of TTL	Sets the maximum number of TTL from 1 to 10.				
	Maximum Number of Notification	Sets the maximum number of notifications from 10 to 20.				

E-Mail Alert

Purpose:

To configure settings for E-Mail Alert. This page can also be displayed by clicking **E-Mail Alert** in the left frame.

Values:

E-Mail Server Settings	Primary SMTP Gateway	Sets the primary SMTP gateway.
	SMTP Port Number	Specifies the SMTP port number. This must be 25, 587 or between 5000 and 65535.
	E-Mail Send Authentication	Specifies the authentication method for outgoing e-mail.
	SMTP Login User	Specifies the SMTP login user. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.
	SMTP Login Password	Specifies the SMTP account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
	Re-enter SMTP Login Password	Enter the SMTP account password again to confirm.

	POP3 Server Address	Specifies the POP3 server address in IP address format of "aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd" or as a DNS host name using up to 63 characters.	
	POP3 Port Number	Specifies the POP3 server port number. This must be 110 or between 5000 and 65535.	
	POP User Name	Specifies the POP3 account user name. Up to 63 alphanumeric characters, periods, hyphens, underscores, and at symbols (@) can be used. If specifying more than one address, separate them using commas.	
	POP User Password	Specifies the POP3 account password using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.	
	Re-enter POP User Password	Enter the password again to confirm.	
	Reply Address	Designates the reply e-mail address sent with each e-mail alert.	
	SMTP Server Connection	Displays the status of the SMTP server connection.	
E-Mail Alert Settings	E-Mail List 1	Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the e-mail alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.	
	Select Alerts for List 1	Supplies Alerts	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for paper handling and/or service calls.
	E-Mail List 2	Sets acceptable e-mail addresses for the e-mail alert feature using up to 255 alphanumeric characters.	
	Select Alerts for List 2	Supplies Alerts	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for consumables.
		Paper Handling Alerts	Specifies whether to receive an e-mail alert for paper handling and/or service calls.

Bonjour (mDNS)

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings for Bonjour.

Values:

Host Name	Specifies the host name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and "-" (dash). The original setting will remain valid if nothing is entered.
Printer Name	Specifies the printer name up to 63 alphanumeric characters and symbol sets.

SNMP

Purpose:

To configure the detailed settings of SNMP.

Values:

Community Name	Community Name (Read only)	Specifies the community name to access (read only) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if nothing is entered. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read Community is public.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read only)	Enter the community name to access (read only) data again to confirm.
	Community Name (Read/Write)	Specifies the community name to access (read and write) data using up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original setting will remain valid if nothing is entered. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Read/Write Community is private.
	Re-enter Community Name (Read/Write)	Enter the community name to access (read and write) data again to confirm.
	Community Name (Trap)	Specifies the community name used for trap up to 31 alphanumeric characters. The original settings will remain valid if nothing is entered. Characters entered for community name in the previous settings will not be displayed on the screen. The default Trap Community is " " (NULL).
	Re-enter Community Name (Trap)	Enter the community name used for trap again to confirm.
Trap Notification 1-4	Trap Address Type	Select the trap address type from the list. Selecting Off clears the settings in Trap Address , Port Number , and Notify , and does not notify trap occurrence. Selecting IPv4 or IPv6 allows you to enter Trap Address .
	Trap Address	Specifies the IP address and IP socket in the following format: <ul style="list-style-type: none">IPv4 Specifies the IP address and IP socket in the nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn:mmmmm format. Each section of "nnn" is a variable value between 0 and 255. Note that values 127 and 224-254 are not valid for the first three-digits only. The IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65535.IPv6 Specifies the IP address and IP socket in the xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:mmmmm format. Each section of "xxxx" is a hexadecimal variable value between 0 and ffff. The IP socket mmmmm is a variable value between 0 and 65535.
	Trap Notification (IP) Port Number	Enter the SNMP trap destination port number.
	Notify	Specifies whether to notify trap occurrence.
Authenticate Error Trap	Specifies whether to notify Authenticate Error Trap.	

Scan to PC

Purpose:

To specify the client when scanning data.

Values:

FTP Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.
	FTP Passive	Sets whether to enable the FTP Passive mode.
SMB Client	Connection Time-Out	Sets the connection time-out period from 1 to 60 seconds.

Reset Print Server

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) for the network feature and reboot the printer. You can also initialize the NVM of the printer from **Reset Defaults** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

Values:

Initialize NIC NVRAM memory and restart printer.	Click Start to initialize NVM. Network settings will revert to the factory default settings and reboot the network capability.
Restart Printer	Click Start to reboot the printer.

Security

The Security tab contains the **Set Password** and **IP Filter (IPv4)** pages.

Set Password

Purpose:

To set or change the password that is required to access the setup parameters of the printer from the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**.

This page can also be displayed by clicking **Set Password** in the left frame.



NOTE: If you forgot your password, initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) to restore the password to the default (NULL). See "Reset Print Server" on page 132.



NOTE: When you change the password to lock the operator panel, set the password from **Panel Lock Set** in the **Printer Settings**.

Values:

Administrator Password	Sets the password using up to 10 alphanumeric characters. The password will appear as asterisks (*) in the field when it is entered.
Re-enter Administrator Password	Enter the password again to confirm.

IP Filter (IPv4)

Purpose:

To specify the IP address and subnet mask to be permitted or denied access to the printer.

Values:

Address	Specifies the IP addresses that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
Address Mask	Specifies the subnet mask that are permitted or denied access to the printer. Enter a numeric value between 0 and 255 in each field.	
Active Mode	Permit	Permits printing from specified network address.
	Reject	Rejects printing from specified network address.
	Disable	Disables the IP Filter feature for the specified IP address.

Print Volume

Use the **Print Volume** menu to verify the number of printed pages.

Values:

Printer Page Count	Displays the total number of pages printed since the printer was shipped from the factory.
Paper Used	Displays the number of pages printed for each paper size.

Address Book

The **Address Book** menu contains the **Fax/E-Mail** and **Server Address** pages.

Fax/E-Mail

The **Fax/E-Mail** page contains the following subpages.

Address Book	Allows you to view, edit, or create address book entries.
Fax Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create fax group entries.
E-Mail Group	Allows you to view, edit, or create e-mail group entries.
E-Mail Default Setup	Allows you to view, edit, or set the default e-mail subject and message.

Address Book - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the address book entries registered on the **Address Book** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of user IDs indicated on the button.
ID:Name	Displays a user ID and the name of the user registered under that user ID. IDs without an entry show (Not in Use) in the Name column.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the user.
E-Mail Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected user ID.

Confirm/Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry of the selected user ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected user ID.

Address Book (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the address book entries on the **Address Book** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm/Change** or **Create** on the **Address Book** top page.

Values:

ID (Fax Speed Dial)	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Allows you to view or edit the name of the user registered under the user ID, or enter a name for the new entry.
Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the phone number of the user, or enter a phone number for the new entry.
E-mail Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of the user, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
Delete	Click this button to delete the entry for the user ID. This button is available only on the dialog box for editing an existing entry.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Address Book (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the address book entries registered on the **Address Book** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **Address Book** top page.

Values:

ID (Fax Speed Dial)	Displays the selected user ID.
Name	Displays the name of the of the user registered under the selected user ID.
Phone Number	Displays the phone number of the user.
E-mail Address	Displays the e-mail address of the user.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the fax group entries registered on the **Fax Group** page.

Values:

GroupID:Name	Displays a fax group ID and the assigned group name. IDs without an entry show (Not in Use) in the Name column.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm/Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

FAX Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the fax number group entries on the **Fax Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm/Change** or **Create** on the **Fax Group** top page.

Values:

Fax Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
FAX Speed Dial	Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of speed dial codes indicated on the button.
	ID:Name	Displays a speed dial code and the names of an entry registered under the speed dial code. Speed dial codes without an entry show (Not in Use) in the Name column.
	Phone Number	Allows you to view or edit the fax number of an entry registered under the selected speed dial code, or enter a fax number for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

FAX Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the fax number group entries registered on the **Fax Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **Fax Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the e-mail address entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page.

Values:

GroupID:Name	Displays a group ID and the assigned group name. IDs without an entry show (Not in Use) in the Name column.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected group ID.
Confirm/Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected group ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected group ID.

E-Mail Group (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the e-mail address group entries on the **E-Mail Group** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm/Change** or **Create** on the **E-Mail Group** top page.

Values:

E-Mail Group	ID	Displays the selected group ID.
	Name	Allows you to view or edit the name assigned for the group ID, or enter a new group name.
E-Mail Address	Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
	ID:Name	Displays a user ID and the name of the user registered under that user ID. IDs without an entry show (Not in Use) in the Name column.
	Address	Allows you to view or edit the e-mail address of an entry registered under the selected user ID, or enter an e-mail address for the new entry.
	Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
	Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
	Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Group (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the e-mail group entries registered on the **E-Mail Group** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **E-mail Group** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected group ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the group ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

E-Mail Default Setup

Purpose:

To set the default e-mail subject and message.

Values:

Default Subject	Allows you to enter the default e-mail subject. Up to 50 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Body Text	Allows you to enter the default e-mail message. Up to 200 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

Server Address

Server Address - Top Page

Purpose:

To view the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page.

Values:

Address List to:	Selecting each button displays a list of entries for the group of IDs indicated on the button.
ID:Name	Displays a server ID and the name of a file directory registered under that server ID. IDs without an entry show (Not in Use) in the Name column.
Server Address	Displays the address of the file directory.
Delete	Deletes the entry for the selected server ID.
Confirm/Change	Displays a dialog box where you can edit the entry for the selected server ID.
Create	Displays a dialog box where you can create a new entry under the selected server ID.

Server Address (Confirm/Change, Create)

Purpose:

To view or edit the server address entries on the **Server Address** page, or create a new entry. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Confirm/Change** or **Create** on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Allows you to view or change the server name assigned to the server ID, or enter a new server name.
Server Type	FTP Select this to store scanned documents on a server via the FTP protocol. SMB Select this to store scanned documents on a computer via the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server Address	Allows you to view or edit the server address registered under the server ID, or enter a new server address.
Share Name	Allows you to view or edit the assigned shared name, or enter a new shared name, when Server Type is set to SMB .
Server Path	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server path, or enter a new path.

Server Port Number	Allows you to view or edit the assigned server port number, or enter a new port number. If you leave the text box blank, the default port number (FTP: 21, SMB: 139) will be used.
Login Name	Allows you to view or edit the login name that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new login name.
Login Password	Allows you to view or edit the password that is required to access the selected protocol, or enter a new password.
Re-enter Password	Enter the password again to confirm.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Server Address (Delete)

Purpose:

To delete the server address entries registered on the **Server Address** page. The following items are in the dialog box that appears when you click **Delete** on the **Server Address** top page.

Values:

ID	Displays the selected server ID.
Name	Displays the name assigned for the server ID.
Server Address	Displays the server address registered under the server ID.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Back	Click this button to return to the top page.

Tray Settings

Use the **Tray Settings** menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

MPF Paper Type	Sets the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Paper Size	Sets the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Custom Size - Y	Sets the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
MPF Custom Size - X	Sets the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
Display Popup	Sets whether to display a popup menu that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
Apply New Settings	Click this button to apply the new settings.
Restore Settings	Click this button to restore the previous settings.

Understanding the Tool Box Menus

The **Tool Box** allows you to view or specify the system settings. You can also diagnose the system settings by using the **Tool Box**.

The **Tool Box** consists of the **Printer Settings Report**, **Printer Maintenance**, and **Diagnosis** tabs.

 **NOTE:** The **Password** dialog box appears the first time you try to change settings on **Tool Box** when **Panel Lock** is set on the printer. In this case, enter the password you specified, and click **OK** to apply the settings.

Starting the Tool Box

Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer** → **Tool Box**.

 **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** window appears in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

Using the Tool Box to Change the Printer Settings

You can select menu items and corresponding values from the **Tool Box**.

To select a new value as a setting:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer** → **Tool Box**.

 **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** window appears in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select the desired menu item.

Each menu item has a list of values for the menu item. A value can be:

- A phrase or word to describe a setting
 - A numerical value that can be changed
 - An On or Off setting
- 4 Select the desired value, and then click the associated button with each menu item.

Driver settings may have precedence over changes previously made and may require you to change the **Tool Box** defaults.

Printer Settings Report

The Printer Settings Report tab contains the **Printer Information**, **Menu Settings**, **Reports**, **TCP/IP Settings**, **Tray Settings**, **Defaults Settings**, and **Fax Settings** pages.

Printer Information

Purpose:

To display the information of your printer.

Values:

Dell Service Tag Number	Displays the service tag number of your printer.
Express Service Code	Displays the express service code of the printer.
Printer Serial Number	Displays the serial number of the printer.
Printer Type	Displays the type of the printer.
Asset Tag Number	Displays the asset tag of the printer.
Memory Capacity	Displays the memory capacity.
Processor Speed	Displays the processing speed.
Firmware Version	Displays the version of the controller.
Network Firmware Version	Displays the Network Interface Card (NIC) version.
MCU Firmware Version	Displays the version of the Machine Control Unit (MCU) firmware.
Printing Speed (Color)	Displays the speed for color printing.
Printing Speed (Monochrome)	Displays the speed for monochrome printing.
Boot Code Version	Displays the boot code version.
Color Table Version	Displays the color table version.

Menu Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of your printer.

Values:

System Settings	Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Deep Sleep	Displays the time taken by the printer before it enters Deep Sleep mode after it goes into Sleep mode.
	Auto Reset	Displays the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.
	Panel Select Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is correct. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Panel Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the operator panel input is incorrect. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.

	Job Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a job is complete. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when a problem occurs. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Out of Paper Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted when the printer runs out of paper. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	Auto Clear Alert Tone	Displays the volume of the tone that is emitted 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear. Off indicates that the tone is disabled.
	All Tones	Displays the volume of all the alert tones. Off indicates that all the tones are disabled.
	Job Time-Out	Displays the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Fault Time-Out	Displays the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally.
	Panel Language	Displays the language used on the operator panel.
	Auto Log Print	Displays whether to automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.
	Disable printing with larger paper size	Displays whether to disable printing if the paper size set in the printer driver and the paper size set in the tray of the printer does not match (the paper set in the tray is larger).
	mm/inch	Displays the measurement unit used after the numeric value on the operator panel.
Date & Time	Date Format	Displays the default date format.
	Time Format	Displays the default time format; 24H or 12H .
	Time Zone	Displays the default time zone.
	Set Date	Displays the date setting.
	Set Time	Displays the time setting.
Paper Density	Plain	Displays the paper density of plain paper.
	Label	Displays the paper density of labels.
Adjust Transfer Roller	Plain	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for thick plain paper.
	Recycled	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for recycled paper.
	Covers	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for cover paper.
	Coated	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for coated paper.
	Envelope	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for envelopes.
	Label	Displays the voltage setting of the transfer roller for labels.

Adjust Fusing Unit	Plain	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for plain paper.
	Plain Thick	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for thick plain paper.
	Recycled	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for recycled paper.
	Covers	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for cover paper.
	Coated	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for coated paper.
	Envelope	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for envelopes.
	Label	Displays the temperature setting of the Fusing Unit for labels.
Auto Registration Adjustment		Displays whether to automatically adjust color registration.
Adjust Altitude		Displays the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
Non-Dell Toner		Displays whether to use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Transfer Roller Refresh Mode		Displays whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
Web Link Customization	Select Reorder URL	Displays a link used for ordering consumables.
	Regular	Displays the regular web address (http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna/PrinterSeg.aspx).
	Premier	Displays the premier web address (http://premier.dell.com).

Reports

Purpose:

To print the settings and history information of your printer.

The reports are printed in the paper size specified in system settings.

Values:

System Settings	Click to print a detailed list of the system settings.
Panel Settings	Click to print a detailed list of the panel settings.
Job History	Click to print the completed jobs history.
Error History	Click to print the error history.
Color Test Page	Click to print the Color Test Page.
Address Book List	Click to print the list of Personal Address, Fax Group, and E-mail Group stored as Address Book.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To display the current settings of TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocol.

Values:

IP Address Mode	Displays the method for acquiring the IP address.
IP Address	Displays the IP address of your printer.
Subnet Mask	Displays the subnet mask.
Gateway Address	Displays the gateway address.

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To display the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

Paper Type	Displays the paper type setting of the MPF.
Paper Size	Displays the paper size setting of the MPF.
Custom Size - Y	Displays the length of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
Custom Size - X	Displays the width of custom size paper loaded in the MPF.
Display Popup	Displays whether to use a popup menu that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.

Defaults Settings

Purpose:

To display the default scan, fax, and copy settings of the printer.

Values:

Scan Defaults	Scan To Network	Displays whether to store scanned image on a network server or on a computer.
	File Format	Displays the file format to save the scanned image.
	Color	Displays whether to scan in color or in black and white.
	Resolution	Displays the default scan resolution.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default scan density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
	Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.
	Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.
	Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.
	TIFF File Format	Displays the TIFF file format.
	Image Compression	Displays the image compression level.
Fax Defaults	Max E-Mail Size	Displays the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent.
	Resolution	Displays the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.
	Document Type	Displays the type of document.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default density level to be used for fax transmission.
Copy Defaults	Delayed Start	Displays the fax transmission start time.
	Color	Displays whether to make copies in color or in black and white.
	Reduce/Enlarge	Displays the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.
	Original Type	Displays the default document type.
	Document Size	Displays the default document size.
	Lighter/Darker	Displays the default copy density level.
	Sharpness	Displays the default sharpness level.
	Auto Exposure	Displays whether to suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Color Balance (Red)	Displays the color balance level of red.
	Color Balance (Green)	Displays the color balance level of green.
	Color Balance (Blue)	Displays the color balance level of blue.
	Gray Balance	Displays the gray balance level.
	Multiple-Up	Displays whether to enable the Multiple-Up feature.
	Collated	Displays whether to sort the copy job.
Margin Top/Bottom	Displays the value of the top and bottom margins.	
Margin Left/Right	Displays the value of the left and right margins.	
Margin Middle	Displays the value of the middle margin.	

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To display the basic fax settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	Displays the fax receiving mode.
Auto Rec Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Rec Fax/Tel	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	Displays the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Displays the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
Ring Tone Volume	Displays the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax .
Line Type	Displays the line type.
Tone/Pulse	Displays the dialing type.
Resend Delay	Displays the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Displays the number of redial attempts.
Redial Delay	Displays the interval between redial attempts.
Junk Fax Setup	Displays whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
Remote Receive	Displays whether to receive faxes by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Displays the remote receive code to start Remote Receive.
Fax Header	Displays whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name	Displays the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Number	Displays the fax number to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Displays whether to attach a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Displays the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) setting.
Sent Fax Fwd	Displays whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Fwd Number	Displays the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes are to be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Displays whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Displays a prefix dial number. This number dials before any auto dial number is started.
Discard Size	Displays whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.
ECM	Displays whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM).
Modem Speed	Displays the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Displays whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Fax Transmit	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Displays whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Fax Protocol	Displays whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Displays the country where the printer is used.

Printer Maintenance

The Printer Maintenance tab contains the System Settings, Date & Time, Paper Density, Adjust Transfer Roller, Adjust Fusing Unit, Registration Adjustment, Adjust Altitude, Reset Defaults, Non-Dell Toner, Transfer Roller Refresh Mode, Web Link Customization, TCP/IP Settings, Tray Settings, EWS, Scan Defaults, Fax Defaults, Copy Defaults, and Fax Settings pages.

System Settings

Purpose:

To configure the power saving mode, auto clear time, warning tones, time-out time, operator panel language settings, job log auto print, and mm/inch setting.

Values:

Power Saver Timer	Sleep ^{*1}	Available Range: 5–30 minutes	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
	Deep Sleep	Available Range: 1–6 minutes	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters Deep Sleep mode after it goes into Sleep mode.
Auto Reset	45 seconds	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it automatically resets the settings for Copy, Scan, or Fax on the operator panel to the defaults when no additional settings are made.	
	1 minute		
	2 minutes		
	3 minutes		
	4 minutes		
Alert Tone	Panel Select Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
		Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
		Medium	
		High	
	Panel Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
		Medium	
		High	
	Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
		Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
		Medium	
		High	

Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Medium	
	High	
Out of Paper Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Medium	
	High	
Auto Clear Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Medium	
	High	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Low	Specifies the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Medium	
	High	
Job Time-Out	0	Disables the job time-out.
	Available Range: 5–300 seconds	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.
Fault Time-Out	0	Disables the fault time-out.
	Available Range: 3–300 seconds	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The print job is cancelled if it times out.
Panel Language	English	Specifies the language to be used on the operator panel.
	French	
	Italian	
	German	
	Spanish	
	Dutch	
	Danish	
	Norwegian	
Swedish		
Auto Log Print	Off	Does not automatically print a job history report.
	On	Automatically prints a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Disable printing with larger paper size ^{*2}	Off	Prints even if the paper set in the tray of the printer is larger than the paper size set in the printer driver (the paper size does not have to match).
	On	Disables printing if the paper size set in the printer driver differs from the paper set in the tray of the printer (the paper set in the tray is larger).
mm/inch	millimeter (mm)	Specifies the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.
	inch (")	
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	
<p>^{*1} Enter 5 in Sleep to put the printer in the Sleep mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 5 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering. Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.</p> <p>The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the Sleep mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.</p> <p>^{*2} Disable printing with larger paper size is available only in the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool and the Tool Box.</p>		

Date & Time

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Date Format	Specifies the date format; yy/mm/dd, mm/dd/yy, or dd/mm/yy.	
Time Format	Specifies the time format; 12H or 24H.	
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.	
Set Date	Specifies the current date.	
Set Time	Specifies the current time.	
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Light	Specifies the paper density of plain paper.
	Normal	
Label	Light	Specifies the paper density of labels.
	Normal	
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	

Adjust Transfer Roller

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller. To decrease the voltage, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Available Range: -3 – +3
Plain Thick	Available Range: -3 – +3
Recycled	Available Range: -3 – +3
Covers	Available Range: -3 – +3
Coated	Available Range: -3 – +3
Envelope	Available Range: -3 – +3
Label	Available Range: -3 – +3
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To decrease the temperature, set negative values. To increase, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to decrease the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	Available Range: -3 – +3
Plain Thick	Available Range: -3 – +3
Recycled	Available Range: -3 – +3
Covers	Available Range: -3 – +3
Coated	Available Range: -3 – +3

Envelope	Available Range: -3 – +3
Label	Available Range: -3 – +3
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Registration Adjustment

Purpose:

To set **Color Registration Adjustment** (individual yellow, magenta, cyan correction) settings. When **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **On**, the printer prints the color registration chart and adjusts the color registration by using the chart. Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

Values:

Auto Registration Adjustment	Off	Automatically adjusts color registration.	
	On	Does not automatically adjust color registration.	
Auto Correct ^{*1}		Click Start to automatically correct color registration.	
Print Color Regi Chart ^{*1,*2}		Click Start to print a color registration chart.	
Color Registration Adjustment 1 (Lateral) ^{*1}	Yellow	Available Range: -5–+5	Specifies lateral (perpendicular to paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually.
	Magenta	Available Range: -5–+5	
	Cyan	Available Range: -5–+5	
Color Registration Adjustment 2 (Process) ^{*1}	LY(Left Yellow)	Available Range: -5–+5	Specifies process (paper feed direction) color adjustment values individually.
	LM(Left Magenta)	Available Range: -5–+5	
	LC(Left Cyan)	Available Range: -5–+5	
	RY(Right Yellow)	Available Range: -5–+5	
	RM(Right Magenta)	Available Range: -5–+5	
	RC(Right Cyan)	Available Range: -5–+5	
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	

^{*1} This item is available only when **Auto Registration Adjustment** is set to **Off**.

^{*2} The color registration chart prints a lattice pattern of yellow, magenta, and cyan lines. On the chart, find the values on the right side that are next to the line that is perfectly straight for each of the three colors. If the value for this line is 0, color registration is not needed. If the value for this line is any value other than 0, specify the adjustment values under **Color Registration Adjustment**.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

 **NOTE:** An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0 meter	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000 meters	
2000 meters	
3000 meters	
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Reset Defaults

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) for system parameters or Address Book data. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

For details, see "Resetting Defaults" on page 162.

Values:

System Section	Click to initialize the system parameters.
User Fax Section	Click to initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Click to initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

 **NOTE:** Using non-Dell™-brand toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

 **NOTE:** Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Values:

Non-Dell Toner	Off	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
	On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Transfer Roller Refresh Mode

Purpose:

To execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

Transfer Roller Refresh Mode	Off	Does not automatically execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
	On	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	

Web Link Customization

Purpose:

To specify a link used for ordering consumables.

Values:

Select Reorder URL	Select the Regular or Premier URL.
Regular	Displays the regular web address (http://accessories.us.dell.com/sna/PrinterSeg.aspx).
Premier	Displays the premier web address (http://premier.dell.com).
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

TCP/IP Settings

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings.

Values:

IP Address Mode	AutoIP	Automatically sets the IP address.
	BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
	RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
	DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
	Panel	Manually sets the IP address.
IP Address	Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.	
Subnet Mask	Manually sets the subnet mask.	
Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.	
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	
Restart printer to apply new settings	Click Restart printer to apply new settings to apply the changes.	

Tray Settings

Purpose:

To specify the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).

Values:

Paper Type	Plain	Specifies the type of paper loaded in the MPF.
	Plain Thick	
	Covers	
	Coated	
	Label	
	Recycled	
	Envelope	
	Plain - Side 2	
	Plain Thick - Side 2	
	Covers - Side 2	
	Coated - Side 2	
	Recycled - Side 2	
Paper Size	A4	Specifies the size of paper loaded in the MPF.
	A5	
	B5	
	Letter	
	Folio	
	Legal	
	Executive	
	Envelope #10	
	Monarch	
	Monarch Landscape	
	DL	
	DL Landscape	
	C5	
	Custom Size	
Custom Size - Y	Available Range: 127–355 mm/ 5.0–14.0 inch	Specifies the length of custom size paper.
Custom Size - X	Available Range: 77–215 mm/3.0–8.5 inch	Specifies the width of custom size paper.
Display Popup	On	Displays a popup menu that prompts the user to set Paper Type and Paper Size when the paper is loaded in the MPF.
	Off	Does not display a popup menu.
Apply New Settings	After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.	

EWS (Embedded Web Server or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool)

Purpose:

To display the server settings of the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.



NOTE: When the printer is connected to the USB port, this setting cannot be displayed.

Values:

Print Server Settings		Click Display to display the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Display of EWS	On	Turns on the display of the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
	Off	Turns off the display of the server settings for the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click Restart printer to apply new settings to apply the changes.

Scan Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Scan settings.

Values:

Scan To Network	Computer (Network)	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
	Server (FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.
File Format	TIFF	Saves the scanned image in TIFF .
	PDF	Saves the scanned image in PDF .
	JPEG	Saves the scanned image in JPEG .
Color	Black & White	Scans in black and white mode.
	GrayScale	Scan in grayscale mode.
	Color	Scans in color mode.
	Color (Photo)	Scans in color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.
Resolution	200	Scans an image at 200dpi.
	300	Scans an image at 300dpi.
	400	Scans an image at 400dpi.
	600	Scans an image at 600dpi.
Document Size	A4	Sets the document size to A4 .
	A5	Sets the document size to A5 .
	B5	Sets the document size to B5 .
	Letter	Sets the document size to Letter .
	Folio	Sets the document size to Folio .
	Legal	Sets the document size to Legal .
	Executive	Sets the document size to Executive .

Lighter/Darker	Lighter2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter1	
	Normal	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker2	
Sharpness	Softest	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
	Softer	
	Normal	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
	Sharper	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
	Sharpest	
Auto Exposure	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Margin Top/Bottom	Available Range: 0–50 mm/0.0–2.0 inch	Specifies the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left/Right	Available Range: 0–50 mm/0.0–2.0 inch	Specifies the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0–50 mm/0.0–2.0 inch	Specifies the value of the middle margin.
TIFF File Format	TIFF V6	Sets the TIFF file format to TIFF V6 .
	TTN2	Sets the TIFF file format to TTN2 .
Image Compression	High	Sets the image compression level to High .
	Medium	Sets the image compression level to Medium .
	Low	Sets the image compression level to Low .
Max E-Mail Size		Sets the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Fax Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Fax settings.

Values:

Resolution	Standard	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
	Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
	Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the Super Fine resolution.
	Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.
Document Type	Text	Improves the image quality of documents with text.
	Photo	Improves the image quality of documents with photos.
Lighter/Darker	Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter1	
	Normal	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker2	
Delayed Start	Available Range: 00:00–23:59	Sets the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Copy Defaults

Purpose:

To create your own default Copy settings.

Values:

Color	Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.	
	Color	Prints in color mode.	
Reduce/Enlarge	mm series	200%	
		A5->A4 (141%)	
		A5->B5 (122%)	
		100%	Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.
		B5->A5 (81%)	Sets the default reduction ratio when you set the default measurement unit to millimeter.
	A4->A5 (70%)		
	50%		
	Custom	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio to the custom size.	
	inch series	200%	Sets the default enlargement ratio when you set the default measurement unit to inch.
		Statement->Legal (154%)	
Statement->Letter (129%)			
100%		Does not enlarge or reduce the size of a copied image.	
Legal->Letter (78%)		Sets the default reduction ratio when you set the default measurement unit to inch.	
Ledger->Letter (64%)			
50%			
Custom	Sets the default reduction/enlargement ratio to the custom size.		
Custom Reduce/Enlarge	Available Range: 25-400%	Reduces or enlarges the image to the custom size when Reduce/Enlarge is set to Custom .	
Original Type	Text	Suitable for documents with text.	
	Text & Photo	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.	
	Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.	
Document Size	A4	Sets the document size to A4.	
	A5	Sets the document size to A5.	
	B5	Sets the document size to B5.	
	Letter	Sets the document size to Letter.	
	Folio	Sets the document size to Folio.	
	Legal	Sets the document size to Legal.	
	Executive	Sets the document size to Executive.	

Lighter/Darker	Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
	Lighter1	
	Normal	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
	Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
	Darker2	
Sharpness	Softest	Makes the copy softer than the original.
	Softer	
	Normal	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
	Sharper	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
	Sharpest	
Auto Exposure	On	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.
	Off	Does not suppress the background.
Color Balance (Red)	Available Range: -2- 2	Sets the color balance level of red.
Color Balance (Green)	Available Range: -2- 2	Sets the color balance level of green.
Color Balance (Blue)	Available Range: -2- 2	Sets the color balance level of blue.
Gray Balance	Available Range: -2- 2	Sets the gray balance level.
Multiple-Up	Off	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
	Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
	ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
	Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge .
Collated	Uncollated	Does not sort the copy job.
	Collated	Sorts the copy job.
	Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.
Margin Top/Bottom	Available Range: 0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	Specifies the value of the top and bottom margins.
Margin Left/Right	Available Range: 0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	Specifies the value of the left and right margins.
Margin Middle	Available Range: 0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	Specifies the value of the middle margin.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.

Fax Settings

Purpose:

To configure the basic fax settings.

Values:

Receive Mode	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the remote receive code.
	Fax	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Rec Fax/Tel , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Rec Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.
Auto Rec Fax/Tel	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.
Auto Rec Ans/Fax	Available Range: 0–255 seconds	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.
Line Monitor	Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
	Low	Specifies the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.
	Medium	
	High	
Ring Tone Volume	Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
	Low	Specifies the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax .
	Medium	
	High	
Line Type	PSTN	Sets the line type to PSTN.
	PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.
Tone/Pulse	Tone	Sets the dialing type to Tone.
	Pulse(10PPS)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (10 pulse per second).
Resend Delay	Available Range: 3–255 seconds	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.
Redial Attempts	Available Range: 0–9	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.
Redial Delay	Available Range: 1–15 minutes	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.

Junk Fax Setup	Off	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
	On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.
Remote Receive	Off	Disables the remote receive feature.
	On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.
Remote Rcv Tone	Available Range: 00–99	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.
Fax Header	On	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.
	Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
Fax Header Name		Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
Fax Number		Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.
Fax Cover Page	Off	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
	On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.
DRPD Pattern	Pattern1–7	Provides a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.
Sent Fax Fwd	Off	Does not forward incoming faxes.
	Forward	Always forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination.
	Print and Forward	Always forwards incoming faxes to a specified destination and prints all forwarded incoming faxes.
Fax Fwd Number		Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Off	Does not set a prefix dial number.
	On	Sets a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num		Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
	On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
	Auto Reduction	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.
ECM	On	Enables the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
	Off	Disables the ECM.
Modem Speed	2.4	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
	4.8	
	9.6	
	14.4	
	33.6	
Fax Activity	Auto Print	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
	No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.
Fax Transmit	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.

Fax Broadcast	Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.
	Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
	Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations.
Fax Protocol	Print Disable	Does not print a protocol monitor report.
	Print On Error	Prints a protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
	Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Country		Selects the country where the printer is used.
Apply New Settings		After you complete the settings, click Apply New Settings to apply the changes.
Restart printer to apply new settings		Click Restart printer to apply new settings to apply the changes.

Diagnosis

The Diagnosis tab contains the **Chart Print**, **Environment Sensor Info**, **Clean Developer**, and **Refresh Mode** pages.

Chart Print

Purpose:

To print various charts that can be used for diagnosing your printer.

Values:

Pitch Configuration Chart	Click to print full halftone pages for yellow, magenta, cyan, and black. Also outputs pages to check the pitch.
Ghost Configuration Chart	Click to print a chart to check for ghost printing.
4 Colors Configuration Chart	Click to print bands of yellow, magenta, cyan, and black with varying density.
MQ Chart	Click to print charts to check for the binding.
Alignment Chart	Click to print a chart, and then check for proper alignment of the print image on the paper.
Drum Refresh Configuration Chart	Click to print a chart to check the light fatigue of the drum unit.

Environment Sensor Info

Purpose:

To output the internal environment sensor information of the printer to **Result** by clicking **Get Environment Sensor Info**.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Clean Developer	Click Start to stir the toner.
-----------------	---------------------------------------

Refresh Mode

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

 **NOTE:** Using the Refresh Mode consumes extra toner.

Values:

Toner Refresh Mode	Yellow	Click to clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
	Magenta	Click to clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
	Cyan	Click to clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
	Black	Click to clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

- 1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer → Tool Box.

 **NOTE:** When multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer, the **Select Printer** window appears. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The Tool Box opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Reset Defaults** from the list at the left side of the page.

The Reset Defaults page is displayed.

- 4 Select the desired option button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Understanding the Printer Menus

When your printer is configured as a network printer available to a number of users, the access to the Admin Menu menus can be limited. This prevents unauthorized users from using the operator panel to inadvertently change the default menu settings that has been set by the administrator. However, you can use select settings for individual print jobs using the printer driver. Print settings selected from the printer driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel.

Defaults Settings

Use the Defaults Settings menu to configure the default copy, scan, and fax settings of the printer.

Copy Defaults

Use the Copy Defaults menus to configure a variety of copy features.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Color

Purpose:

To set whether to make copies in color or in black and white.

Values:

Black & White	Prints in black and white mode.
Color*	Prints in color mode.

Collated

Purpose:

To sort the copy job.

Values:

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job.
Collated	Sorts the copy job.
Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job.

Reduce/Enlarge

Purpose:

To set the default copy reduction/enlargement ratio.

Values:

mm series

200%
A5->A4(141%)
A5->B5(122%)
100%*
B5->A5(81%)
A4->A5(70%)
50%

inch series

200%
Stmt->Lgl(154%)
Stmt->Ltr(129%)
100%*
Lgl->Ltr (78%)
Ldgr->Ltr(64%)
50%



NOTE: You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press > to enlarge the zoom ratio or press < to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.



NOTE: This item is available only when Multiple-Up is set to Off or Manual.

Document Size

Purpose:

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 x 297 mm) ^{*1}
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11") ^{*1}
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")
^{*1} The default for Document Size varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Original Type

Purpose:

To select the copy image quality.

Values:

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Text & Photo*	Suitable for documents with both text and photos/gray tones.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On*	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

Color Balance R

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of red within the range of -2 to +2.

Color Balance G

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of green within the range of -2 to +2.

Color Balance B

Purpose:

To specify the default color balance level of blue within the range of -2 to +2.

Gray Balance

Purpose:

To specify the default gray balance level within the range of -2 to +2.

Multiple-Up**Purpose:**

To print two original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

Margin Top/Bottom**Purpose:**

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
Available Range:	
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Left/Right**Purpose:**

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
Available Range:	
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Middle**Purpose:**

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
Available Range:	
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Scan Defaults

Use the Scan Defaults menus to configure a variety of scanner features.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Scan to Network

Purpose:

To store the scanned image on a network server or on a computer.

Values:

Computer(Network)*	Stores the scanned image on a computer using the Server Message Block (SMB) protocol.
Server(FTP)	Stores the scanned image on a server using the FTP protocol.

File Format

Purpose:

To specify the file format to save the scanned image.

Values:

PDF*

TIFF

JPEG

Color

Purpose:

To set whether to scan in color or in black and white.

Values:

Black & White Scans in black and white mode.

Color* Scans in color mode.

Color Button Set

Purpose:

To assign color mode to the color mode switch button.

Values:

B&W Button	Black & White*	Scans in black and white when Black & White is selected for a color mode.
	Grayscale	Scans in gray scale when Black & White is selected for a color mode.
Color Button	Color*	Scans in color when Color is selected for a color mode.
	Color(Photo)	Scans in color (Photo) when Color is selected for a color mode. This is suitable for photographic images.

Resolution**Purpose:**

To specify the default scan resolution.

Values:

200 x 200dpi*
300 x 300dpi
400 x 400dpi
600 x 600dpi

Document Size**Purpose:**

To specify the default document size.

Values:

A4 (210 x 297 mm)* ¹
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11")* ¹
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

*¹ The default for Document Size varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Lighter/Darker**Purpose:**

To set the default scan density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the scanned image lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the scanned image darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Sharpness

Purpose:

To set the default sharpness level.

Values:

Sharpest	Makes the scanned image sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the scanned image sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the scanned image softer than the original.
Softest	

Auto Exposure

Purpose:

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Values:

Off	Does not suppress the background.
On *	Suppresses the background of the original to enhance text on the scanned image.

Margin Top/Bottom

Purpose:

To specify the value of the top and bottom margins.

Values:

2 mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
Available Range:	
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Left/Right

Purpose:

To specify the value of the left and right margins.

Values:

2 mm*/0.1 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
Available Range:	
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

Margin Middle

Purpose:

To specify the value of the middle margin.

Values:

0 mm*/0.0 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
-----------------	---

Available Range:
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

TIFF File Format

Purpose:

To specify the default TIFF file format.

Values:

TIFF V6*	Sets the default TIFF file format to TIFF V6.
----------	---

TTN2	Sets the default Tiff file format to TTN2.
------	--

Image Compression

Purpose:

To specify the image compression level.

Values:

High	Sets the image compression level to High.
------	---

Medium*	Sets the image compression level to Medium.
---------	---

Low	Sets the image compression level to Low.
-----	--

Max E-Mail Size

Purpose:

To specify the maximum size of e-mail that can be sent, within the range of 50 K bytes to 16384 K bytes. The default is 2048 K bytes.

Fax Defaults

Use the Fax Defaults menus to configure a variety of fax features.

 **NOTE:** The FAX service cannot be used unless you set up a country code under Country. If Country is not set up, a message Set The Country Code appears on the display.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Resolution

Purpose:

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission.

Values:

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The Super Fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution. See the notes below.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

 **NOTE:** Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Original Type

Purpose:

To select the default document type.

Values:

Text*	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

Purpose:

To set the default copy density level.

Values:

Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Delayed Start

Purpose:

This feature enables you to set a specific time for the fax transmission to start. Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all of the documents to be faxed into its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

Values:

21:00*/PM9:00*	Specify the fax transmission start time when sending a fax at a specified time.
----------------	---

0:00 - 23:59 /	
AM/PM1:00 - 12:59	



NOTE: A maximum of 19 delayed fax jobs can be stored in this printer.

Print from USB Defaults

Layout

Purpose:

To automatically enlarge print documents when you print directly from a USB storage device.

Values:

Auto*	Automatically enlarges print documents to fit on the paper.
-------	---

Off	Does not enlarge print documents.
-----	-----------------------------------

Tray Settings

Use the Tray Settings menu to set the paper size and type of paper loaded in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF).



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

MPF

Purpose:

To specify the paper loaded in the MPF.

Values:

Paper Size	A4 (210 x 297 mm) ^{*1}
	A5 (148 x 210 mm)
	B5 (182 x 257 mm)
	Letter (8.5 x 11") ^{*1}
	Folio (8.5 x 13")
	Legal (8.5 x 14")
	Executive (7.25 x 10.5")
	Envelope #10 (4.1x9.5")
	Monarch Env. (3.9x7.5")
	Monarch Env. L (7.5x3.9")

DL Env. (110x220 mm)			
DL Env. L (220x110 mm)			
C5 Envelope (162 x 229 mm)			
Custom Size	Portrait(Y)	297mm [*] /11.7inch [*] Available Range: 127-355 mm/5.0-14.0 inches	Specifies the length of the custom size paper.
	Landscape(X)	210mm [*] /8.3inch [*] Available Range: 77-215 mm/3.0-8.5 inches	
Paper Type	Plain*		
	Plain Thick		
	Covers		
	Coated		
	Label		
	Recycled		
	Envelope		
	Plain S2		
	Plain Thick S2		
	Covers S2		
	Coated S2		
	Recycled S2		
Display Popup	Off	Does not display a popup menu.	
	On*	Displays a popup menu that prompts the user to set Paper Size and Paper Type when the paper is loaded in the MPF.	

*1 The default for Paper Size varies depending on country-specific factory default.

 **NOTE:** For more information on supported paper sizes, see "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 208.

Report / List

Use the Report / List menu to print various types of reports and lists.

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter the Report / List menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the  **(Set)** button.

System Settings

Purpose:

To print a list of the information such as the printer name, service tag, the status of the printer, consumables, and the network settings.

Panel Settings

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of all the settings on the operator panel menus.

Job History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of the print, copy, fax, or scan jobs that have been processed. This list contains the last 20 jobs.

Error History

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of paper jams and fatal errors.

Color Test Page

Purpose:

To print a page for testing colors.

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To print a detailed list of monitored protocols.

Address Book

Purpose:

To print the list of all addresses stored as Address Book information.

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To print the report of faxes you recently received or sent.

Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Report / List` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until the desired report or list is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
The selected report or list is printed.

Printing a Report/List Using the Tool Box

- 1 Click `Start` → `All Programs` → `Dell Printers` → `Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer` → `Tool Box`.



NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Settings Report** tab.
- 3 Select **Reports** from the list at the left side of the page.
The **Reports** page is displayed.
- 4 Click the button for the desired report or list.
The report or list is printed.

Admin Menu

Use the Admin Menu menu to configure a variety of printer features.

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter the Admin Menu menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

Phone Book

Use the Phone Book menu to configure the speed dial and group dial settings.

Speed Dial

Purpose:

To store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations.

See also:

"Storing a Number for Speed Dialing" on page 282.

Group Dial

Purpose:

To create a group of fax destinations and register it under a two-digit dial code. Up to 6 group dial codes can be registered.

See also:

"Setting Group Dial" on page 283.

Network

Use the Network menu to change the printer settings affecting jobs sent to the printer through the wired or wireless network.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Ethernet

Purpose:

To specify the communication speed and the duplex settings of Ethernet. The change takes effect after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Auto*	Detects the Ethernet settings automatically.
10BASE-T Half	Uses 10base-T half-duplex.
10BASE-T Full	Uses 10base-T full-duplex.
100BASE-TX Half	Uses 100base-TX half-duplex.
100BASE-TX Full	Uses 100base-TX full-duplex.

 **NOTE:** For Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer, this item is not displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

Wireless Status (Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Purpose:

To display the information on the wireless signal strength. No changes can be made on the operator panel to improve the status of the wireless connection.

Values:

Connection	Good	Indicates good signal strength.
	Acceptable	Indicates marginal signal strength.
	Low	Indicates insufficient signal strength.
	No Reception	Indicates that no signal is received.
SSID	Displays the name that identifies the wireless network.	
Encryption Type	Displays the encryption type.	

 **NOTE:** This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

Wireless Setup (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network interface.

Values:

Select Access	Select the access point from the list.	
	WEP Key Entry	When you select an access point using WEP as the security method, enter the WEP key. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
	PassPhrase Entry	When you select an access point using WPA, WPA2, or Mixed as the encryption type, enter the passphrase of 8 to 63 alphanumeric characters.
Manual Setup	Enter Network (SSID)	Specify a name to identify the wireless network. Up to 32 alphanumeric characters can be entered.
	Infrastructure	Select when you configure the wireless setting through the access point such as a wireless router.
	No Security*	Specify No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying a security method from WEP , WPA-PSK-TKIP , and WPA2-PSK-AES .
	Mixed mode PSK	Select to configure the wireless setting with the encryption type of Mixed mode PSK. Mixed mode PSK automatically selects the encryption type from either WPA-PSK-TKIP, WPA-PSK-AES, or WPA2-PSK-AES.
	PassPhrase Entry	Specifies the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
	WPA-PSK-TKIP	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA-PSK-TKIP.
PassPhrase Entry	Specify the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.	

WPA2-PSK-AES	Select to configure the wireless setting with the security method of WPA2-PSK-AES or WPA-PSK-AES.
	PassPhrase Entry Specify the passphrase of alphanumeric characters from 8 to 63.
WEP	Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
	Transmit Key Specifies the transmit key from WEP Key 1 [*] , WEP Key 2 , WEP Key 3 , and WEP Key 4 .
Ad-hoc	Select to configure the wireless setting without the access point such as a wireless router.
No Security [*]	Specify No Security to configure the wireless setting without specifying the security method from WEP.
WEP	Specifies the WEP key to use through the wireless network. For 64bit keys, up to 10 hexadecimal characters can be entered. For 128bit keys, up to 26 hexadecimal characters can be entered.
	Transmit Key Specifies the transmit key from WEP Key 1 [*] , WEP Key 2 , WEP Key 3 , and WEP Key 4 .

 **NOTE:** This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

WPS (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Purpose:

To configure the wireless network using WPS.

Values:

Push Button Control	PBC Start ^{*1}	No [*]	Disables the security method of WPS-PBC.
		Yes	Configures the wireless setting with the security method of WPS-PBC.
PIN Code	Start Configuration	Configures the wireless setting using the PIN code assigned automatically by the printer.	
	Print PIN Code	Prints the PIN code. Confirm it when you enter the PIN code to your computer.	

^{*1} You can also start WPS-PBC by pressing and holding the  (Wi-Fi | WPS) button.

 **NOTE:** WPS 2.0 compliant. WPS 2.0 works on access points with the following encryption types: Mixed mode PSK, WPA-PSK AES, WPA2-PSK AES, WPA-PSK TKIP, Open (No Security)

 **NOTE:** This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

Reset Wireless (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Purpose:

To initialize wireless network settings. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all wireless network settings are reset to their default values.

No*	Does not reset the wireless setting.
Yes	Resets the wireless setting.

 **NOTE:** This item is displayed when the Ethernet cable is disconnected and Wi-Fi is set to On.

TCP/IP

Purpose:

To configure TCP/IP settings. The change takes effect after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

IP Mode	Dual Stack*	Uses both IPv4 and IPv6 to set the IP address.	
	IPv4 Mode	Uses IPv4 to set the IP address.	
IPv4	Get IP Address	AutoIP*	Automatically sets the IP address.
		BOOTP	Uses BOOTP to set the IP address.
		RARP	Uses RARP to set the IP address.
		DHCP	Uses DHCP to set the IP address.
		Panel	Enables the IP address entered on the operator panel.
	IP Address	Manually sets the IP address allocated to the printer.	
	Subnet Mask	Manually sets the subnet mask.	
	Gateway Address	Manually sets the gateway address.	

Protocol

Purpose:

To enable or disable each protocol. The change takes effect after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

LPD	Disable	Disables the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the LPD port.
Port9100	Disable	Disables the Port9100 port.
	Enable*	Enables the Port9100 port.
WSD	Disable	Disables the Web Services on Devices (WSD) port.
	Enable*	Enables the WSD port.
SNMP	Disable	Disables the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) UDP port.
	Enable*	Enables the SNMP UDP port.
E-Mail Alert	Disable	Disables the E-Mail Alert feature.
	Enable*	Enables the E-Mail Alert feature.

EWS	Disable	Disables an access to Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool embedded in the printer.
	Enable*	Enables an access to Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool embedded in the printer.
Bonjour(mDNS)	Disable	Disables the Bonjour (mDNS).
	Enable*	Enables the Bonjour (mDNS).

IP Filter

Purpose:

To block data received from certain IP addresses through the wired or wireless network. You can set up to five IP addresses. The change takes effect after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

No. n/Address (n is 1-5.)		Sets the IP address for Filter <i>n</i> .
No. n/Mask (n is 1-5.)		Sets the address mask for Filter <i>n</i> .
No. n/Mode (n is 1-5.)	Reject	Rejects an access from the specified IP address.
	Accept	Accepts an access from the specified IP address.
	Off*	Disables the feature for Filter <i>n</i> .

 **NOTE:** This item is only available for LPD or Port9100.

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize network data stored in NVM (non-volatile memory). After executing this function and rebooting the printer, all network settings are reset to their default values.

Values:

Yes	Initializes network data stored in NVM.
No*	Does not initialize network data stored in NVM.

Wi-Fi (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Purpose:

To enable the wireless connection.

Values:

Off	Disables the wireless connection.
On*	Enables the wireless connection.

 **NOTE:** This item is displayed only when the Ethernet cable is disconnected.

 **NOTE:** When you use the USB connection and do not use the wireless connection, you need to disable the wireless LAN.

Fax Settings

Use the Fax Settings menu to configure the basic fax settings.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Receive Mode

Purpose:

To select the default fax receiving mode.

Values:

Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the remote receive code.
FAX*	Automatically receives faxes.
Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Rec TEL/FAX, and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.

Auto Rec Fax

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 0 second.

Auto Rec TEL/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 6 seconds.

Auto Rec Ans/FAX

Purpose:

To set the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call. The interval can be specified within the range of 0 to 255 seconds. The default is 21 seconds.

Line Monitor

Purpose:

To set the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the line monitor.
Low	Sets the volume of the line monitor.
Medium*	
High	

Ring Tone Volume

Purpose:

To set the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax.

Values:

Off	Turns off the volume of the ring tone.
Low	Sets the volume of the ring tone.
Medium	
High*	

Line Type

Purpose:

To select the line type.

Values:

PSTN*	Sets the line type to PSTN.
PBX	Sets the line type to PBX.

Tone/Pulse

Purpose:

To select the dialing type.

Values:

Tone*	Sets the dialing type to Tone.
Pulse (10pps)	Sets the dialing type to Pulse (10 pulse per second).

Resend Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between transmission attempts within the range of 3 to 255 seconds. The default is 8 seconds.

Redial Attempts

Purpose:

To specify the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy, within the range of 0 to 9. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial. The default is 3.

Redial Delay

Purpose:

To specify the interval between redial attempts within the range of 1 to 15 minutes. The default is 1 minute.

Junk Fax Setup

Purpose:

To reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.

Values:

Off*	Does not reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
------	---

On	Rejects faxes sent from unwanted numbers.
----	---



NOTE: Ensure to specify Fax Number before using Junk Fax Setup.

Remote Receive

Purpose:

To receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone after picking up the handset of the telephone.

Values:

Off*	Does not receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
------	---

On	Receives a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.
----	---

Remote Rcv Tone

Purpose:

To specify the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive.

Fax Header**Purpose:**

To print the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Values:

Off	Does not print the information of sender on the header of faxes.
On*	Prints the information of sender on the header of faxes.

Fax Header Name**Purpose:**

To set the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Fax Number**Purpose:**

To set the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.

Fax Cover Page**Purpose:**

To set whether to attach a cover page to faxes.

Values:

Off*	Does not attach a cover page to faxes.
On	Attaches a cover page to faxes.

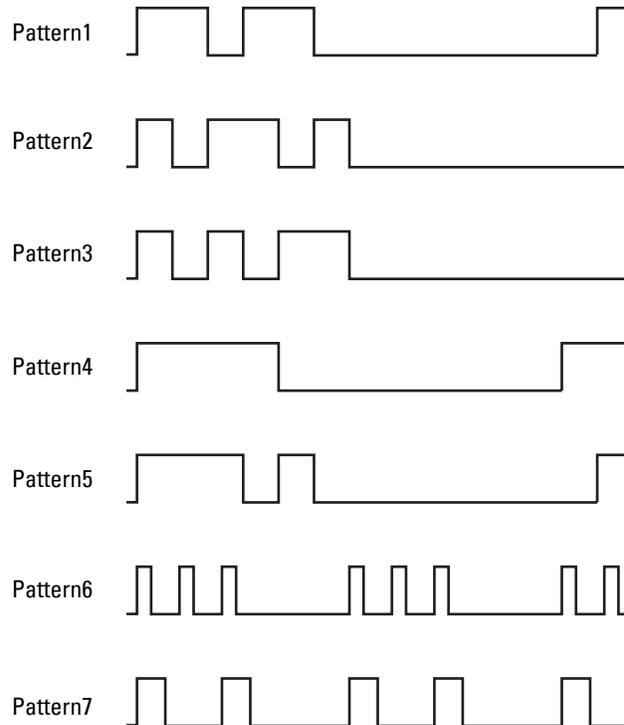
DRPD Pattern

Purpose:

To provide a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern.

Values:

Pattern1-7 DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies. DRPD Patterns are specified by your telephone company. The patterns provided with your printer are shown below:



Ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service. For example, Pattern 7 is the New Zealand FaxAbility distinctive ringing pattern: rings for 400ms, stops for 800ms, rings for 400ms and stops for 1400ms. This pattern is repeated over and over again. This printer only responds to Distinctive Alert cadence(s) DA4 in New Zealand.

Forward Settings

Purpose:

To set whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.

Values:

Off*	Does not forward incoming faxes.
Forward Only	Forwards the incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Print and Forward	Prints the incoming fax and forwards it to a specified destination.

Fax Fwd Number**Purpose:**

To enter the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.

Prefix Dial**Purpose:**

To select whether to set a prefix dial number.

Values:

Off*	Does not set a prefix dial number.
On	Sets a prefix dial number.

Prefix Dial Num**Purpose:**

To set a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).

Discard Size**Purpose:**

To set whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper.

Values:

Off	Prints any excess at the bottom of a fax page without discarding it.
On	Discards any excess at the bottom of a fax page.
Auto Reduction*	Automatically reduces a fax page to fit it onto the output paper.

ECM**Purpose:**

To set whether to enable the Error Correction Mode (ECM). To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.

Values:

Off	Disable the ECM.
On*	Enables the ECM.

Modem Speed

Purpose:

To specify the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.

Values:

2.4 Kbps

4.8 Kbps

9.6 Kbps

14.4 Kbps

33.6 Kbps*

Fax Activity

Purpose:

To set whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.

Values:

Auto Print*	Automatically prints a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
--------------------	---

No Auto Print	Does not automatically print a fax activity report.
----------------------	---

Fax Transmit

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
---------------------	--

Print On Error*	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
------------------------	---

Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission.
----------------------	--

Fax Broadcast

Purpose:

To set whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.

Values:

Print Always*	Prints a transmission report after every fax transmission.
----------------------	--

Print On Error	Prints a transmission report only when an error occurs.
-----------------------	---

Print Disable	Does not print a transmission report after a fax transmission to multiple destinations.
----------------------	---

Protocol Monitor

Purpose:

To set whether to print a protocol monitor report, which helps you identify the cause of a communication problem.

Values:

Print Always	Prints a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission.
Print On Error	Prints a protocol monitor report only when an error occurs.
Print Disable*	Does not print a protocol monitor report after a fax transmission.

Country

Purpose:

To select the country where the printer is used.

System Settings

Use the `System Settings` menu to configure a variety of printer features.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Power Saving Timer

Purpose:

To specify the time for transition to power saver mode.

Values:

Sleep	<u>5min*</u> Available Range: 5–30min	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters Sleep mode after it finishes a job.
Deep Sleep	<u>6min*</u> Available Range: 1–6min	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it enters Deep Sleep mode after it goes into Sleep mode.

Enter 5 in `Sleep` to put the printer in the power saver timer mode five minutes after it finishes a job. This uses less energy, but requires more warm-up time for the printer. Enter 5 if your printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting and you notice lights flickering.

Select a high value if your printer is in constant use. In most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to operate with minimum warm-up time. Select a value between 5 and 30 minutes for the power saver timer mode if you want a balance between energy consumption and a shorter warm-up period.

The printer automatically returns to the standby mode from the power saver timer mode when it receives data from the computer. You can also return the printer to the standby mode by pressing any button on the operator panel.

Auto Reset

Purpose:

To automatically reset the settings for COPY, SCAN, or FAX to the defaults and return to the standby mode after you do not specify any settings for the specified time.

Values:

45sec*
1min
2min
3min
4min

Fault Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the time taken by the printer before it cancels jobs that stop abnormally. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the fault time-out.
On*	60sec*	Specifies the time taken by the printer before it cancels for jobs that stop abnormally.
	Available Range:	
	3–300sec	

Job Time-Out

Purpose:

To specify the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer. The print job is cancelled if it times out.

Values:

Off		Disables the job time-out.
On*	30sec*	Specifies the amount of time that the printer waits for data to arrive from the computer.
	Available Range:	
	5–300sec	

Date & Time

Purpose:

To set the date and time, and regional time zone of the printer.

Values:

Set Date	Specifies the current date.
Set Time	Specifies the current time.
Date Format ^{*1}	<u>yy/mm/dd</u> Specifies the date format. <u>mm/dd/yy</u> <u>dd/mm/yy</u>
Time Format	<u>12H*</u> Specifies the time format. <u>24H</u>
Time Zone	Specifies the time zone.

^{*1} The default for Date Format varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Alert Tone

Purpose:

To configure settings for tones emitted by the printer during operation or when a warning message appears.

Values:

Panel Select Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is correct.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is correct.
	Medium	
	High	
Panel Alert Tone	Off*	Does not emit a tone when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the operator panel input is incorrect.
	Medium	
	High	
Auto Clear Alert	Off*	Does not emit a tone before the printer performs auto clear.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume 5 seconds before the printer performs auto clear.
	Medium	
	High	
Job Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a job is complete.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a job is complete.
	Medium*	
	High	
Alert Tone	Off	Does not emit a tone when a problem occurs.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when a problem occurs.
	Medium*	
	High	

Out of Paper	Off	Does not emit a tone when the printer runs out of paper.
	Low	Emits a tone at the specified volume when the printer runs out of paper.
	Medium*	
	High	
All Tones	Off	Disables all the alert tones.
	Low	Sets the volume of all the alert tones at once.
	Medium*	
	High	

mm / inch

Purpose:

To specify the measurement unit displayed after the numeric value on the operator panel.

Values:

Millimeters (mm)	Specifies the default measurement unit.
------------------	---

Inches (")	
------------	--

 **NOTE:** The default for mm / inch varies depending on country-specific factory default.

Auto Log Print

Purpose:

To automatically print a job history report after every 20 jobs.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically print a job history report.
------	--

On	Automatically prints a job history report.
----	--

 **NOTE:** The job history report can also be printed using the Report List menu.

Low Toner Alert Msg

Purpose:

To specify whether to show the alert message when the toner is low.

Values:

Off	Does not show the alert message when the toner is low.
-----	--

On*	Shows the alert message when the toner is low.
-----	--

Power On Wizard

Purpose:

To perform initial setup for the printer.

Values:

Yes	Performs the initial setup for the printer.
No*	Does not perform the initial setup for the printer.

Maintenance

Use the Maintenance menu to initialize NVM (non-volatile memory), configure the plain paper quality adjustment settings, and configure the security settings.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

F/W Version

Purpose:

To display the version of the controller.

Service Tag

Purpose:

To display the service tag of the printer.

Express Code

Purpose:

To display the express service code of the printer.

Paper Density

Purpose:

To specify the paper density.

Values:

Plain	Light
	Normal*
Label	Light
	Normal*

Adjust Transfer Roller

Purpose:

To specify the optimum voltage settings for printing for the transfer roller. To decrease the voltage, set negative values. To increase the voltage, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. If you see mottles on the print output, try to increase the voltage. If you see white spots on the print output, try to decrease the voltage.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Plain Thick	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Covers	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Coated	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Label	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Recycled	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Envelope	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3

Adjust Fusing Unit

Purpose:

To specify the optimum temperature settings for printing for the fusing unit. To decrease the temperature, set negative values. To increase the temperature, set positive values.

The default settings may not give the best output on all paper types. When the printed paper has curled, try to decrease the temperature. When the toner does not fuse on the paper properly, try to increase the temperature.

 **NOTE:** The print quality changes depending on the values you select for this item.

Values:

Plain	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Plain Thick	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Covers	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3
Coated	0*	Available Range: -3 – +3

Label	0*
	Available Range: -3 – +3
Recycled	0*
	Available Range: -3 – +3
Envelope	0*
	Available Range: -3 – +3

Auto Regi Adjust

Purpose:

To specify whether to automatically adjust color registration.

Values:

Off	Does not automatically adjust color registration.
On*	Automatically adjusts color registration.

Adjust ColorRegi

Purpose:

To automatically adjust color registration.

Color registration adjustment need to be made during the initial setup of the printer or when the printer is moved to a different location.

 **NOTE:** This item is available only when Auto Regi Adjust is set to Off.

Values:

Auto Adjust	Yes	Automatically adjusts color registration.
	No*	Does not automatically adjust color registration.

Clean Developer

Purpose:

To rotate the developer motor and stir the toner in the toner cartridge.

Values:

Yes	Stirs the toner in a new toner cartridge.
No*	Does not stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Toner Refresh

Purpose:

To use up a toner cartridge when you need to replace it before the end of its life, or to stir the toner in a new toner cartridge.

Values:

Yellow	Yes	Cleans the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the yellow toner cartridge.
Magenta	Yes	Cleans the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the magenta toner cartridge.
Cyan	Yes	Cleans the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the cyan toner cartridge.
Black	Yes	Cleans the toner in the black toner cartridge.
	No*	Does not clean the toner in the black toner cartridge.

Transfer Roller Refresh

Purpose:

Specify whether to execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Values:

Off*	Does not automatically execute counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.
On	Automatically executes counter measures for curling/separating discharge of the paper.

Initialize NVM

Purpose:

To initialize NVM (non-volatile memory) for system parameters, Address Book data for fax, or Address Book data for e-mail. After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

For details, see "Resetting Defaults" on page 201.

Values:

User Fax Section	Yes	Initializes the fax number entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the fax number entries in the Address Book.
User Scan Section	Yes	Initializes the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
	No*	Does not initialize the e-mail and server address entries in the Address Book.
System Section	Yes	Initializes the system parameters.
	No*	Does not initialize the system parameters.

Non-Dell Toner

Purpose:

To use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

 **NOTE:** Using non-Dell-brand toner cartridges may make some printer features unusable, reduce print quality and decrease the reliability of your printer. Dell recommends only new Dell-brand toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

 **NOTE:** Before you use toner cartridge of another manufacturer, be sure to restart the printer.

Values:

Off*	Does not use toner cartridge of another manufacturer.
On	Uses toner cartridge of another manufacturer.

Adjust Altitude

Purpose:

To specify the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.

The discharge phenomenon for charging the photo conductor varies with barometric pressure. Adjustments are performed by specifying the altitude of the location where the printer is being used.

 **NOTE:** An incorrect altitude adjustment setting leads to poor printing quality, incorrect indication of remaining toner.

Values:

0m*	Specifies the altitude of the location where the printer is installed.
1000m	
2000m	
3000m	

Secure Settings

Use the Secure Settings menu to set a password to limit access to the menus. This prevents items from being changed accidentally.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Panel Lock

Purpose:

To restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List.

For details see "Panel Lock Function" on page 200.

 **NOTE:** You can select Disable for Panel Lock Set when all items under Function Enabled are set to On and Secure Receive Set is set to Disable.

Values:

Panel Lock Set	Disable*	Does not restrict access to Admin Menu and Report / List.
	Enable	Restricts access to Admin Menu and Report / List with a password.
Change Password	Available Range: 0000-9999	Sets or changes the password required to access Admin Menu and Report / List.

Function Enabled

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable each of the printer services or to require a password to use the services, and to set or change the password.

 **NOTE:** You can access to the items under Function Enabled only when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable.

Values:

COPY	On*	Enables the Copy service.
	Off	Disables the Copy service.
	On(Password)	Enables the Copy service, but requires a password.
	On(Color Password)	Enables the Copy service with a color mode, but requires a password.
FAX	On*	Enables the Fax service.
	Off	Disables the Fax service (the printer will not send or receive faxes).
	On(Password)	Enables the Fax services, but requires a password to send faxes (does not require a password to receive incoming faxes).
SCAN	On*	Enables the Scan service.
	Off	Disables the Scan service.
	On(Password)	Enables the Scan service, but requires a password.
USB-Print	On*	Enables the USB-Print service.
	Off	Disables the USB-Print service.
	On(Password)	Enables the USB-Print service, but requires a password.
	On(Color Password)	Enables the USB-Print service with a color mode, but requires a password.
Change Password		Sets or changes the password required to use the Copy, Scan, Fax, and USB-Print services.

Secure Receive

Purpose:

To specify whether to require a password to print incoming faxes, and to set or change the password. When `Secure Receive Set` is set to `Enable`, the printer stores incoming faxes and prints them when the correct password is entered on the operator panel.



NOTE: You can access to the items under `Secure Receive Set` only when `Panel Lock Set` is set to `Enable`.

Values:

Secure Receive Set	Disable*	Does not require a password to print incoming faxes.
	Enable	Requires a password to print incoming faxes.
Change Password	Available Range: 0000-9999	Sets or changes the password required to print incoming faxes.

Software Download

Purpose:

To enable or disable download of firmware updates.

Values:

Disable	Disables firmware updates.
Enable*	Enables firmware updates.

Scan to E-Mail

Use the `Scan to E-Mail` menu to edit the transmission source.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Edit From Field

Purpose:

To specify whether to enable editing of the transmission source when you use `Scan to E-mail`.

Values:

Disable	Disables editing of the transmission source.
Enable*	Enables editing of the transmission source.

USB Settings

Use the USB Settings menu to change printer settings affecting a USB port.



NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

USB port

Purpose:

To enable or disable the USB interface. The change takes effect after the printer is turned off and then on.

Values:

Enable*	Enables the USB interface.
Disable	Disables the USB interface.

Panel Language

Purpose:

To specify the language to be used on the operator panel.

Values:

English*

Français

Italiano

Deutsch

Español

Nederlands

Dansk

Norsk

Svenska

Panel Lock Function

This feature prevents unauthorized users from changing settings made by the administrator. However, you can select settings for individual print jobs using the printer driver.

Enabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Ensure that `Panel Lock` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Press the  button until `Enable` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** The factory-default panel password is 0000.

 **NOTE:** Be sure to remember the password. The procedure described below allows you to reset the password, but the settings for Address Book and Phone Book are cleared.

- Turn off the printer. Then, while holding the  (Menu) button, turn on the printer.

 **NOTE:** If you change the password while `Panel Lock` is `Enable`, perform steps 1 to 5. Press the  button until `Change Password` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button. Enter the new password, and then press the  (Set) button. This will change the password.

Disabling the Panel Lock

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Enter the password, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until `Secure Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Ensure that `Panel Lock` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Ensure that `Panel Lock Set` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 8 Press the  button until `Disable` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

Resetting Defaults

After executing this function and rebooting the printer, the menu parameters or data are reset to their default values.

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter the Admin Menu menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until System is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until Maintenance is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until Initialize NVM is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Press the ✓ button until the desired setting is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 7 Press the ✓ button until Yes is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

Print Media Guidelines

Print media can be paper, labels, envelopes, and coated paper among others. Your printer provides high-quality printing on a variety of print media. Selecting the appropriate print media for your printer helps avoid printing troubles. This section describes selecting print media, caring for print media, and loading the print media in Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) or Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI).

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Paper

For the best print quality in color, use 75 g/m² (20 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. For the best print quality in black and white, use 90 g/m² (24 lb) xerographic, grain long paper. Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

When loading paper, identify the recommended print side on the paper package, and load the paper accordingly. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 211 and "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 219 for detailed loading instructions.

Paper Characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. It is recommended that you follow these guidelines when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

Both MPF and PSI automatically feed paper whose weights range from 60 to 163 g/m² (16 to 44 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m² (16 lb) may not feed properly, and could cause paper jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m² (20 lb bond) grain long paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency of print media to curve at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl usually occurs after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped, even in the feeder, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and cause feeding problems regardless of humidity. When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the MPF or PSI.

Smoothness

The degree of paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If the paper is too rough, the toner does not fuse to the paper properly, resulting in poor print quality. If the paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding problems. Smoothness between 150 and 250 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture Content

The amount of moisture in the paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper properly. Leave the paper in its original packaging until you are ready to use it. This limits the exposure of the paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Grain Direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either grain long, running the length of the paper, or grain short, running the width of the paper. For 60 to 135 g/m² (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long fibers are recommended. For paper heavier than 135 g/m² (36 lb bond), grain short is preferred.

Fiber Content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically pulped wood. Paper containing fibers such as cotton possess characteristics that can result in degraded paper handling.

Recommended Paper

To ensure the best print quality and feed reliability, use dry 75 g/m² (20 lb) xerographic paper. Business paper designed for general business use also provide acceptable print quality. Only use paper able to withstand high temperatures without discoloring, bleeding, or releasing hazardous emissions. The laser printing process heats paper to high temperatures. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the paper you have chosen is acceptable for laser printers.



NOTE: Always print several samples before buying large quantities of any type of print media. When choosing any print media, you should consider the weight, fiber content, and color.

Unacceptable Paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated paper used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless paper, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted paper with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted paper that can be affected by the temperature in the fusing unit
- Preprinted paper that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than ± 0.09 inches, such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

In some cases, you can adjust registration with your software program to successfully print on these forms.

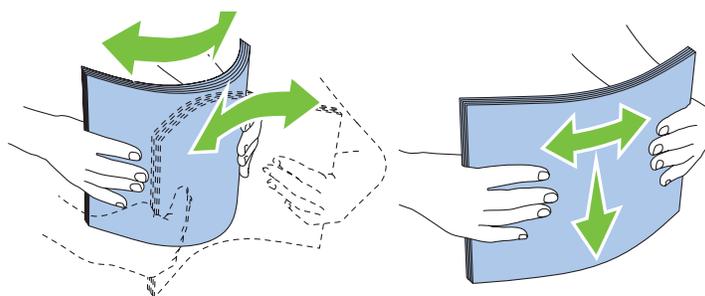
- Coated paper (erasable bond), synthetic paper, thermal paper
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface paper, or curled paper
- Recycled paper containing more than 25% post-consumer waste that do not meet DIN 19 309
- Multiple-part forms or documents
- Print quality may deteriorate (blank spaces or blotches may appear in the text) when printing on talc or acid paper.
- Moist paper that may cause wrinkle

Selecting Paper

Proper paper selection helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams or poor print quality:

- Always use new, dry, and undamaged paper.
- Before loading the paper, identify the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same source. This may result in a paper jam.
- Do not remove the PSI while a job is printing.
- Ensure that the paper is properly loaded in the MPF or PSI.
- Flex paper back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



Selecting Preprinted Media and Letterhead

When selecting preprinted media and letterhead paper for the printer:

- Use grain long paper for best results.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Select paper that absorb ink, but do not bleed.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use paper printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copying machines. The ink must withstand temperatures of 225°C (437°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner or the silicone in the fusing unit. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based should meet these requirements; latex inks might not. If you are in doubt, contact your paper supplier.

Printing on Letterhead

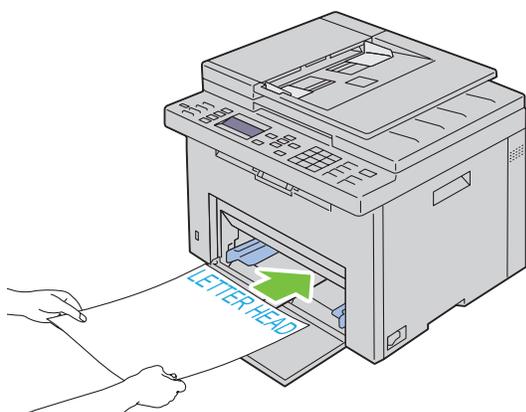
Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the pre-printed letterhead you have selected is acceptable for laser printers.

Page orientation is important when printing on letterhead. Use the following illustration for help when loading letterhead in the print media sources.

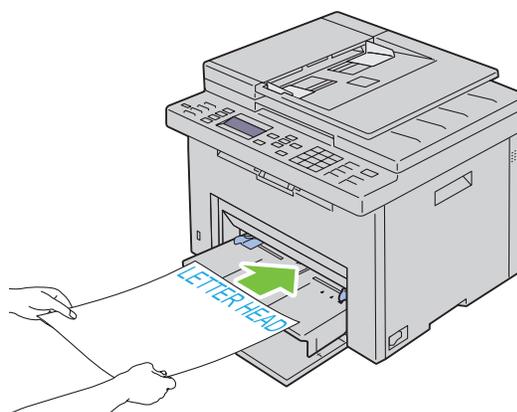
Loading Letterhead

Load the letterhead in the printer with the print side facing up. Ensure that the title on the letterhead enters the printer first.

Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)



Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)



Selecting Pre-Punched Paper

Pre-punched paper brands can differ in the number and placement of holes and in manufacturing techniques. However, it may not be possible to print on the paper depending on the placement of holes on the paper.

To select and use pre-punched paper:

- Test paper from several manufacturers before ordering and using large quantities of pre-punched paper.
- Paper should be punched at the paper manufacturer and not drilled into paper already packaged in a ream. Drilled paper can cause jams when multiple sheets feed through the printer. This may result in a paper jam.
- Pre-punched paper can include more paper dust than standard paper. Your printer may require more frequent cleaning and feed reliability may not be as good as standard paper.
- Weight guidelines for pre-punched paper are the same as non-punched paper.

Envelopes

Depending on the choice of envelopes, it is possible to expect variable levels of light wrinkling. Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 211 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 219 for instructions on loading an envelope.

When printing on envelopes:

- Use only high-quality envelopes that are designed for use in laser printers.
- Set the print media source to MPF or PSI. Set the paper type to **Envelope**, and select the correct size of envelope from the printer driver.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 75 g/m² (20 lb bond) paper. You can use up to 105 g/m² (28 lb bond) weight for the envelope feeder as long as the cotton content is 25% or less. Envelopes with 100% cotton content must not exceed 90 g/m² (24 lb bond) weight.
- Use only freshly unpackaged, undamaged envelopes.
- Use envelopes that can withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions. If you have any doubts about the envelopes you are considering, check with the envelope supplier.
- Adjust the guide to fit the width of the envelopes.
- To load envelope in MPF or PSI, the print side must be facing up.
- See "Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 216 or "Loading an Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 221 for instructions on loading an envelope.
- Use one envelope size during a print job.
- Ensure that the humidity is low because high humidity (more than 60%) and the high printing temperatures may seal the envelopes.
- For best performance, do not use envelopes that:
 - Have excessive curl or twist
 - Are stuck together or damaged in any way
 - Contain windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, embossing
 - Use metal clasps, string ties, or metal folding bars
 - Have an interlocking design
 - Have postage stamps attached
 - Have nicked edges or bent corners

- Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes

Labels

Your printer can print on many labels designed only for use with laser printers.

When selecting labels:

- Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats must be able to withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) and pressure of 25 pounds per square inch (psi).
- Use labels that can be without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use label sheets with a slick backing material.

 **CAUTION: Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.**

When printing on labels:

- Use labels that can withstand temperatures of 205°C (401°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- Set the paper type to Label from the printer driver.
- Do not load labels together with paper in the same tray.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the die-cut.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 inches) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Do not print a label through the printer more than once.
- Portrait orientation is preferred, especially when printing bar codes.
- Do not use labels that have exposed adhesive.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam.
- Do not use label sheets that have adhesive to the edge of the sheet. It is recommended that zone coating of the adhesive is done at least 1 mm (0.04 inches) away from edges. Adhesive material contaminates your printer and could void your warranty.

 **WARNING: Otherwise a jam occurs in the printer and contaminate your printer and your cartridges with adhesive. As a result, could void your printer and cartridge warranties.**

Storing Print Media

For proper print media storage, the following guidelines help avoid media feeding problems and uneven print quality.

- For best results, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so that the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Identifying Print Media and Specifications

This section provides information on supported paper sizes, types, and specification.

Supported Paper Sizes

	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
A4 (210x297 mm)	Y	Y
B5 (182x257 mm)	Y	Y
A5 (148x210 mm)	Y	Y
C5 (162x229 mm)	Y	Y
Monarch (3.875x7.5 in)	Y	Y
Monarch LEF (7.5x3.875 in) ^{*1}	Y	Y ^{*4}
Envelope #10 (4.125x9.5 in)	Y	Y
DL (110x220 mm)	Y	Y
DL LEF (220x110 mm) ^{*1}	Y	Y ^{*4}
Letter (8.5x11 in)	Y	Y
Legal (8.5x14 in)	Y	Y
Folio (8.5x13 in)	Y	Y
Executive (7.25 x 10.5 in)	Y	Y
Custom ^{*2*3}	Y	Y

^{*1} You can place the originals in a long-edge feed direction or in a short-edge feed direction. The following illustration shows SEF and LEF. The arrow mark in the illustration shows the orientation of the paper loading.

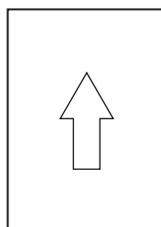
NOTE: Not available when the XML Paper Specification (XPS) Printer Driver is used.

^{*2} Custom width: 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.50 inches)
 The maximum width for envelope (DL LEF): 220.0 mm (8.66 inches)
 Custom length: 127.0 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)
 The maximum length for envelope (Monarch LEF): 98.4 mm (3.87 inches)

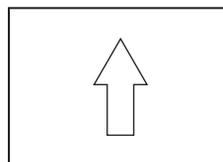
^{*3} Only the administrator user can set the custom size from the printer driver.

^{*4} Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.

SEF



LEF



Supported Paper Types

Media	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)	Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)
Plain	Y*	Y*
Plain Side 2	Y	Y
Plain Thick	Y	Y
Plain Thick Side 2	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y
Recycled Side 2	Y	Y
Label	Y	Y
Covers	Y	Y
Covers Side 2	Y	Y
Envelope	Y	Y
Coated	Y	Y
Coated Side 2	Y	Y

* Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Paper Type Specifications

Paper type	Weight (gsm)	Remarks
Plain Paper	60-90	-
Plain Thick Paper	91-105	-
Covers	106-163	-
Coated	106-163	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Label	-	Inkjet printer paper cannot be used.
Envelopes	-	-
Recycled	60-105	-

Loading Print Media

Loading print media properly helps prevent jams and ensures trouble-free printing.

Before loading print media, identify the recommended print side of the print media. This information is usually on the print media package.

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

 **NOTE:** After loading paper in the feeder, specify the same paper type on the operator panel.

Capacity

Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) can hold:

- 150 sheets of standard paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of thick paper
- One sheet of coated paper
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of post cards
- Five envelopes
- 16.2 mm (0.64 inches) of labels

Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) can hold:

- 10 sheets of standard paper or one sheet of other paper

Print Media Dimensions

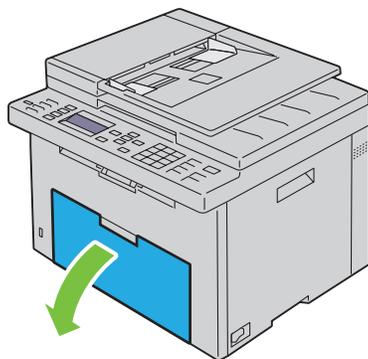
Both MPF and PSI accept print media within the following dimensions:

- Width — 76.2 mm (3.00 inches) to 215.9 mm (8.50 inches)
- Length — 127.0 mm (5.00 inches) to 355.6 mm (14.00 inches)

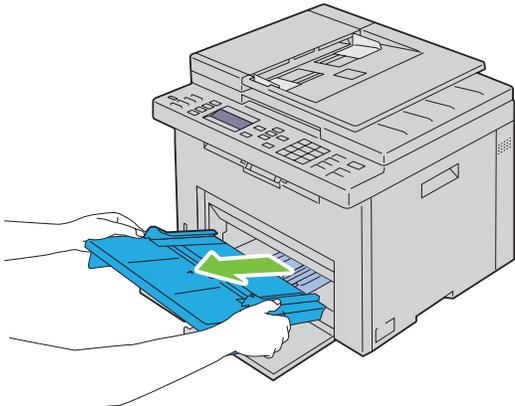
Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

 **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

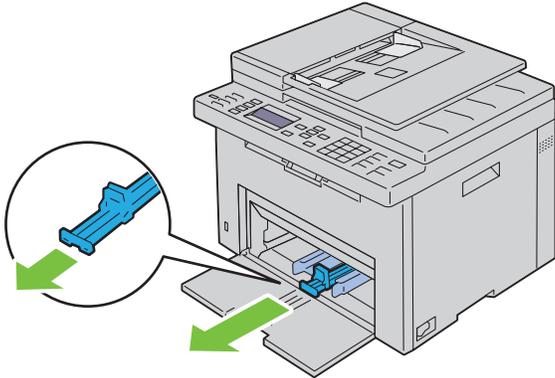
- 1 Open the front cover.



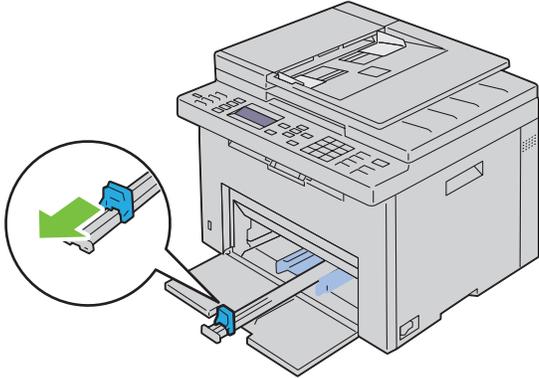
2 Pull the PSI out.



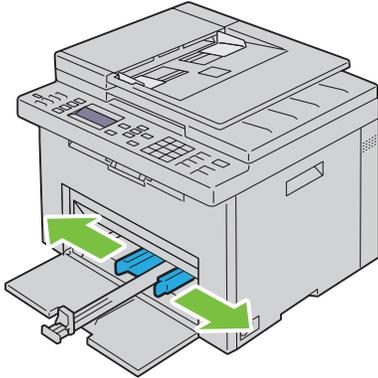
3 Pull the length guide forward until it stops.



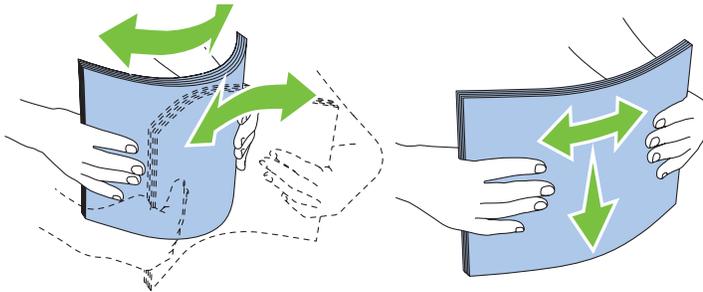
4 Pull the MPF extension forward until it stops.



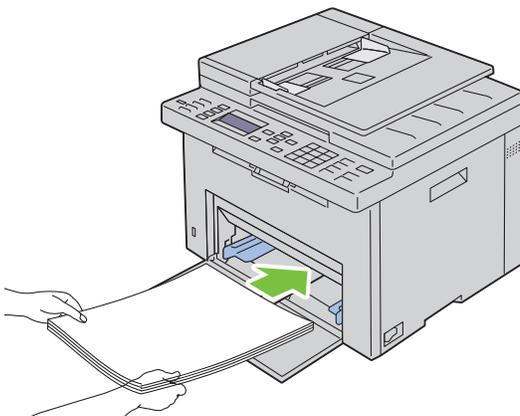
- 5 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum.



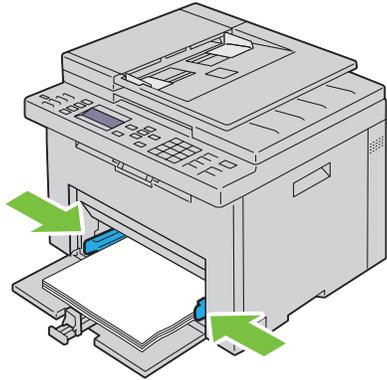
- 6 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



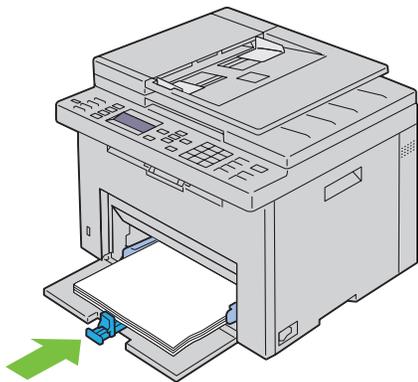
- 7 Load print media on the MPF with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



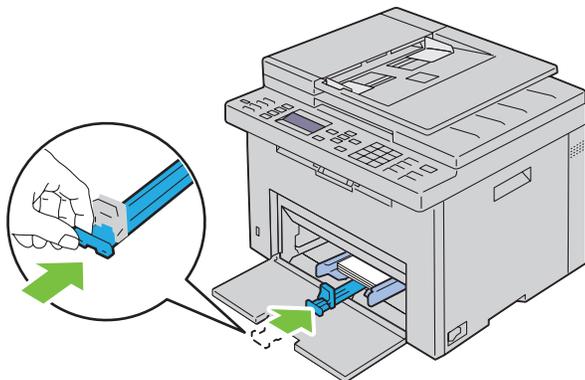
8 Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.



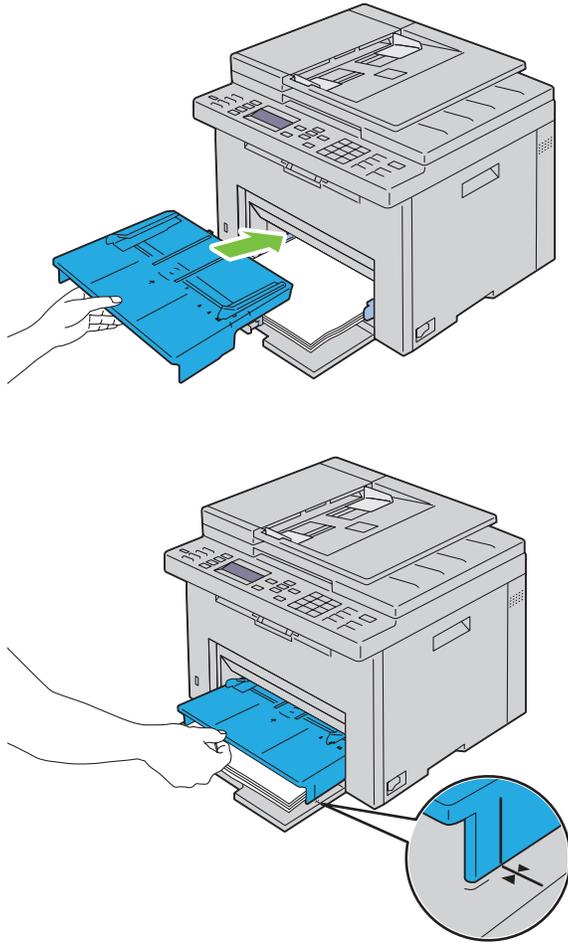
9 Slide the length guide towards the printer until it touches the print media.



 **NOTE:** Depending on the size of print media, first slide the MPF extension backward until it stops, and then pinch the length guide and slide it backward until it touches print media.



- 10** Insert the PSI into the printer and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.



- 11** Select the paper type from the operator panel if any print media other than plain print media is loaded. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the MPF, you must specify the paper size setting by using the operator panel.

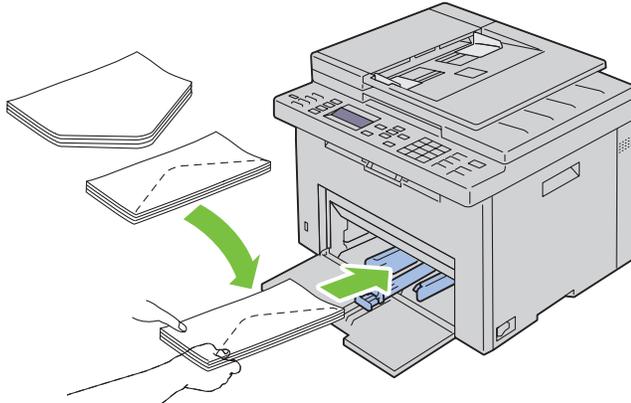
 **NOTE:** For standard-size papers, adjust the guides first and then set papers.

Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

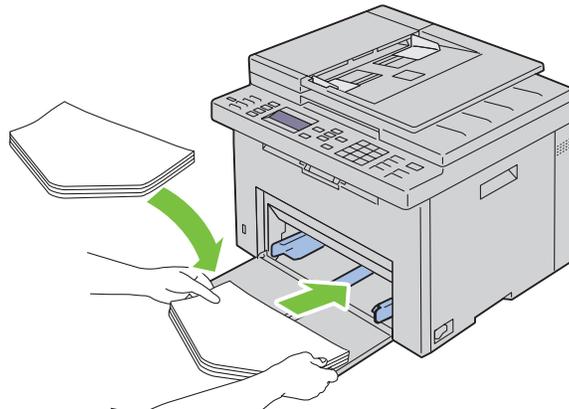
 **NOTE:** When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the printer driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

When Loading Envelope #10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.

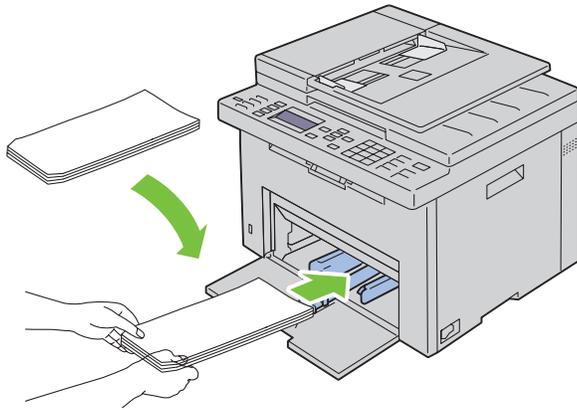


To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.



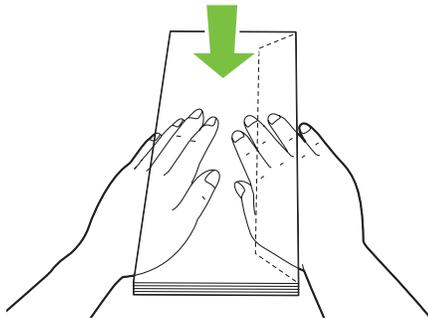
When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, with the flap open.

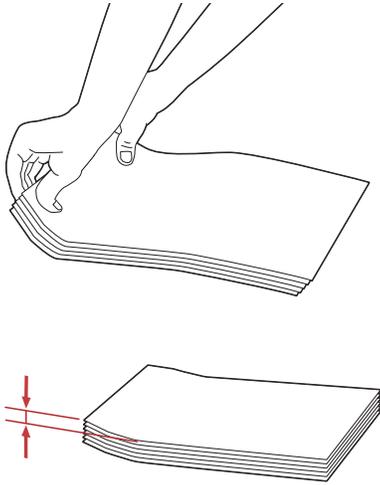


CAUTION: Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE: If you do not load envelopes in the MPF right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the MPF.



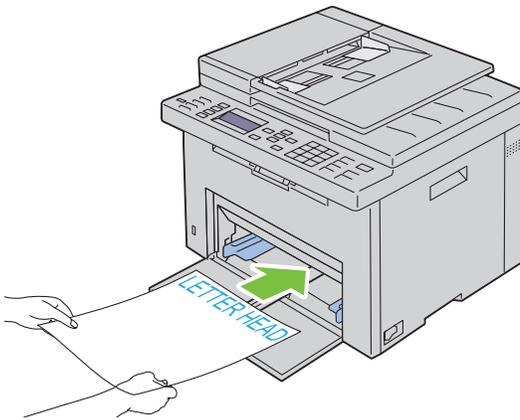
 **NOTE:** If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.



 **NOTE:** To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the printer driver.

Loading Letterhead

Load the letterhead in the printer with the print side facing up. Ensure that the title on the letterhead enters the printer first.

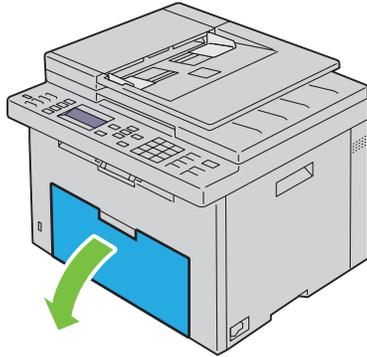


Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

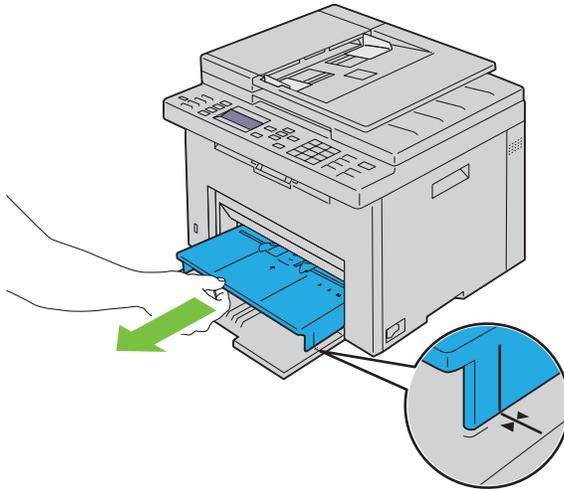
 **NOTE:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove the PSI while printing is in progress.

 **NOTE:** Use only laser print media. Do not use ink jet paper in this printer.

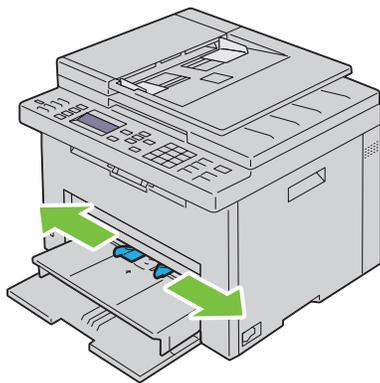
- 1 Open the front cover.



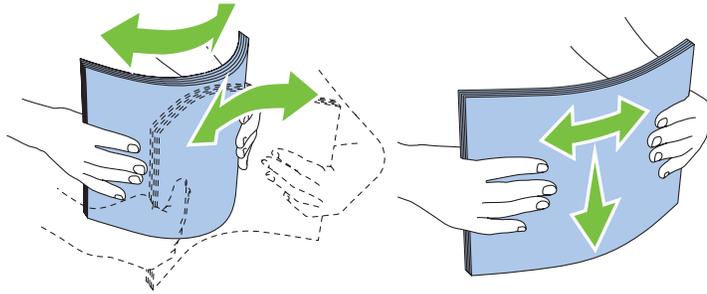
- 2 Slide the PSI forward, and then align the PSI to the marking on the paper tray.



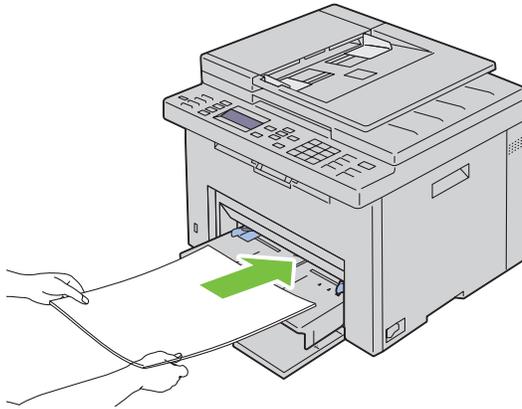
- 3 Adjust the paper width guides to their maximum.



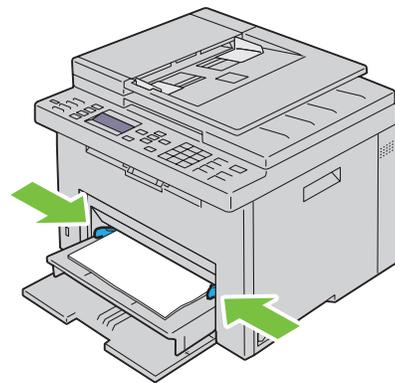
- 4 Before loading the print media, flex the sheets back and forth, and then fan them. Straighten the edges of the stack on a level surface.



- 5 Load print media on the PSI with the top edge first and with the recommended print side facing up.



- 6 Adjust the width guides until they rest lightly against the edges of the stack of print media.



- 7 Select the paper type from the printer driver if the loaded print media is not standard plain paper. If a user-specified print media is loaded in the PSI, you must specify the paper size setting by using the printer driver.

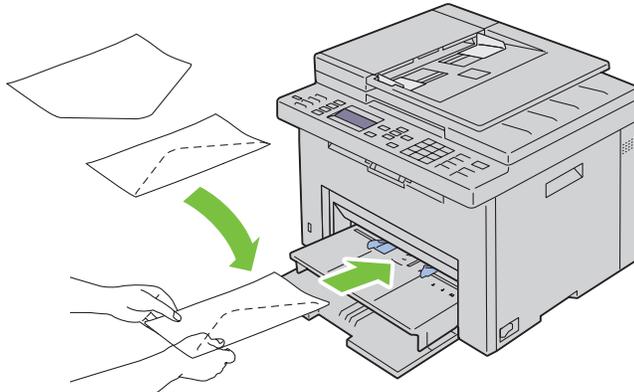
Loading an Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

 **NOTE:** Be sure to fully insert the envelope until it stops. Otherwise, print media that is loaded on the MPF will be fed.

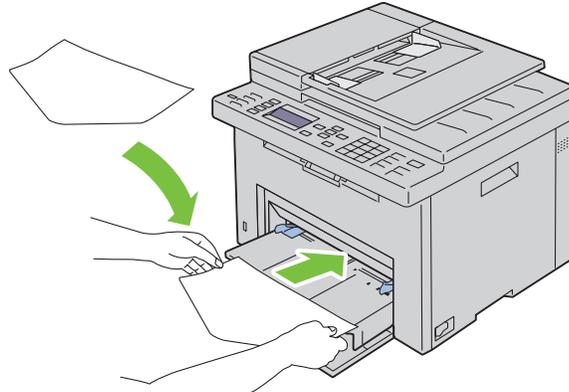
 **NOTE:** When you print on envelopes, be sure to specify the envelope setting on the printer driver. If not specified, the print image will be rotated 180 degrees.

When Loading Envelope #10, DL, or Monarch

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, the flap side facing down, and the flap turned to the right.

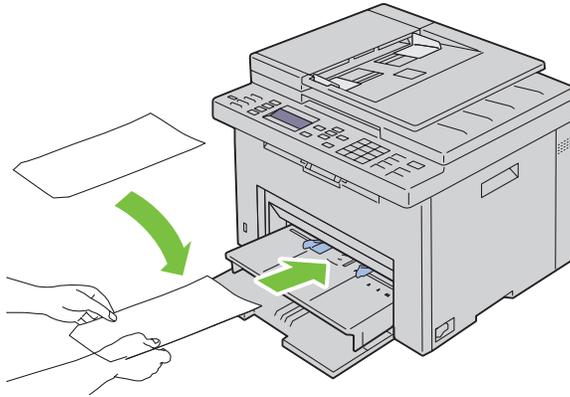


To prevent DL and Monarch from being wrinkled, they are recommended to be loaded with the print-side facing up, flap opened, and facing you.



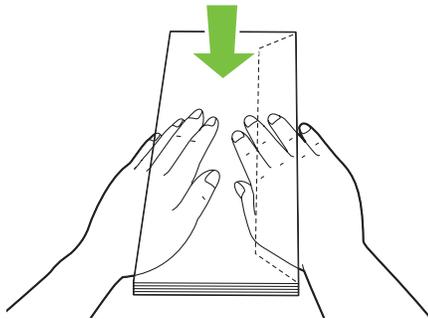
When Loading C5

Load envelopes with the side to be printed on facing up, with the flap open.

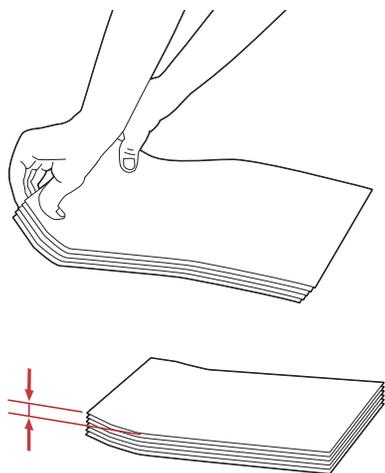


CAUTION: Never use envelopes with windows, or coated linings. These lead to paper jams and can cause damage to the printer.

NOTE: If you do not load envelopes in the PSI right after they have been removed from the packaging, they may bulge. To avoid jams, flatten them as shown below when loading them in the PSI.



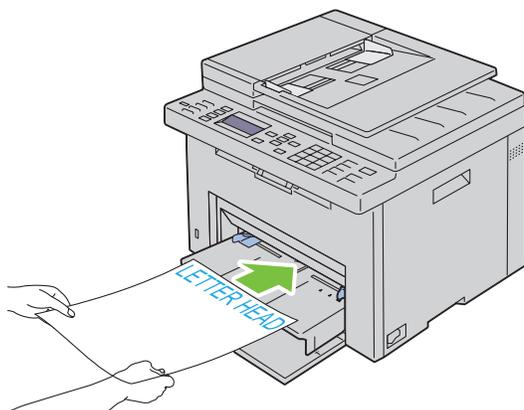
 **NOTE:** If envelopes are still not fed correctly, add some bending to the flap of the envelopes as shown in the following illustration.
The amount of the bending shall be 5 mm (0.20 inches) or less.



 **NOTE:** To confirm the correct orientation of each print media such as envelopes, see the instruction on the Envelope/Paper Setup Navigator on the printer driver.

Loading Letterhead

Load the letterhead in the printer with the print side facing up. Ensure that the title on the letterhead enters the printer first.



Loading Print Media When Manual Duplex Printing

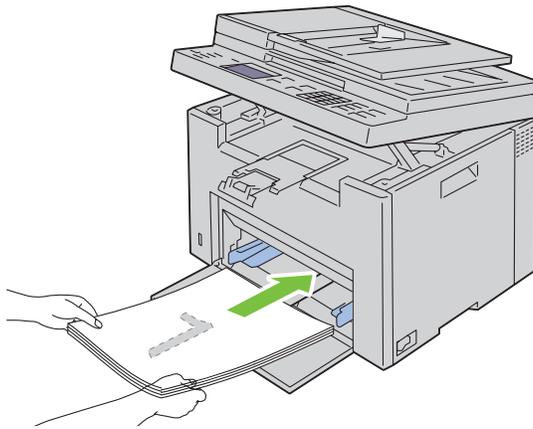
NOTE: When printing on curled paper, straighten the paper and then insert it into the feeder.

When you start manual duplex printing, the instruction window appears. Note that the window cannot be reopened once it is closed. Do not close the window until duplex printing is complete.

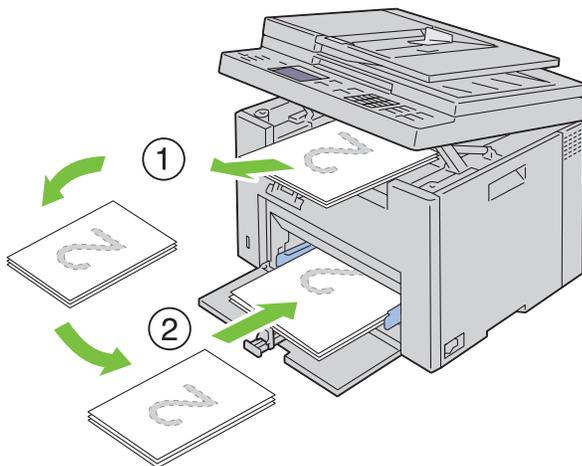
Manual duplex printing can be done using the MPF or PSI.

When Using the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

- 1 First print the even pages (rear sides).
For a six page document, rear sides are printed in the order of page 6, page 4, then page 2.
Ready / Error LED blinks and the message appears on the operator panel when the even pages finish printing.



- 2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the output tray and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the MPF.



NOTE: Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

NOTE: Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of papers.

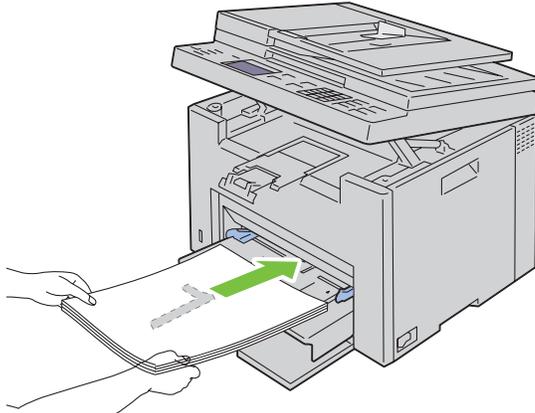
- 3 Ensure that Insert Output to Tray Press to Continue Printing is highlighted, and then press the (Set) button. Print pages in the order page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), then page 5 (rear of page 6).

When Using the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)

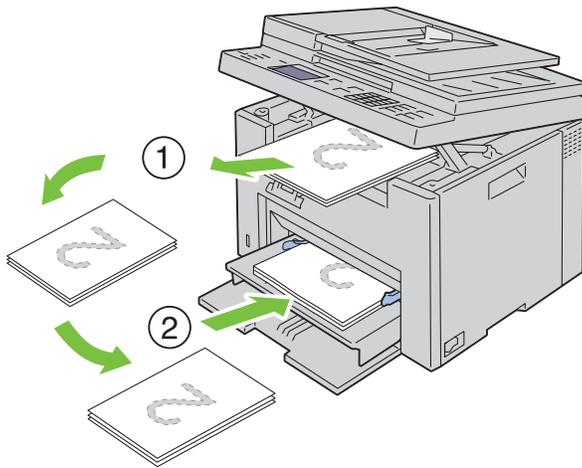
- 1 First print the even pages (rear sides).

For a six page document, even pages are printed in the order page 6, page 4, then page 2.

Ready / Error LED blinks and the message appears on the operator panel when the even pages finish printing.



- 2 After the even pages are printed, remove the paper stack from the output tray and set them as they are (with the blank side facing up) into the PSI.



NOTE: Warped or curled prints can cause paper jams. Straighten them before setting them.

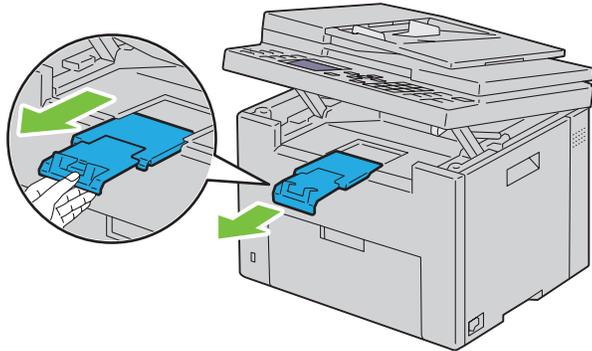
NOTE: Printing on both sides of the paper is not possible if the document consists of various sizes of papers.

- 3 Ensure that Insert Output to Tray Press to Continue Printing is highlighted, and then press the (Set) button. Print pages in the order page 1 (rear of page 2), page 3 (rear of page 4), then page 5 (rear of page 6).

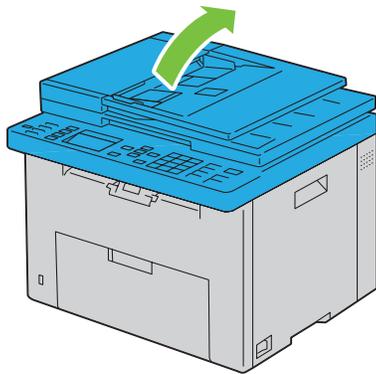
Using the Output Tray Extension

The output tray extension is designed to prevent print media from falling from the printer after the print job is complete.

Before printing a document, ensure that the output tray extension is fully extended.



 **NOTE:** When you pull out envelopes or small size print media, lift up the scanner unit.



Printing, Copying, Scanning, and Faxing

18 Printing.....	229
19 Copying	233
20 Scanning.....	245
21 Faxing	267

Printing

This chapter covers tips for printing, how to print certain lists of information from your printer, and how to cancel a job.

Tips for Successful Printing

Tips on Storing Print Media

Store your print media properly. For more information, see "Storing Print Media" on page 207.

Avoiding Paper Jams

 **NOTE:** It is recommended that you try a limited sample of any print media you are considering using with the printer before purchasing large quantities.

By selecting appropriate print media and loading it properly, you can avoid paper jams. See the following instructions on loading print media:

- "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 211
- "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 219
- "Avoiding Jams" on page 323

If you experience a jam, see "Jam" on page 350 for instructions.

Sending a Job to Print

Install the printer driver to use all the features of the printer. When you choose **Print** from an application, a window representing the printer driver opens. Select the appropriate settings for the specific job you are sending to print. Print settings selected from the driver have precedence over the default menu settings selected from the operator panel or **Tool Box**.

You may need to click **Preferences** from the initial **Print** box to see all the available system settings you can change. If you are not familiar with a feature in the printer driver window, open the online Help for more information.

To print a job from a typical Microsoft® Windows® application:

- 1 Open the file you want to print.
- 2 From the **File** menu, select **Print**.
- 3 Verify that the correct printer is selected in the dialog box. Modify the system settings as needed (such as the pages you want to print or the number of copies).
- 4 To adjust system settings not available from the first screen, such as **Quality**, **Paper Size**, or **Image Orientation**, click **Preferences**.

The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears.

- 5 Specify the print settings. For more information, click **Help**.
- 6 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 7 Click **Print** to send the job to the selected printer.

Canceling a Print Job

There are several methods for canceling a print job.

Canceling From the Operator Panel

To cancel a job after it has started printing:

- 1 Press the **X** (Cancel) button.

 **NOTE:** Printing is canceled only for the current job. All the following jobs will continue to print.

Canceling a Job From the Computer Running Windows

Canceling a Job From the Taskbar

When you send a job to print, a small printer icon appears in the right corner of the taskbar.

- 1 Double-click the printer icon.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 2 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 3 Press <Delete> on the keyboard.

Canceling a Job From the Desktop

- 1 Minimize all programs to reveal the desktop.
Click **Start** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 7 and Windows Server® 2008 R2).
Click **Start** → **Printers and Faxes** (for Windows XP and 2003).
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Printers** (for Windows Vista®).
Click **Start** → **Control Panel** → **Printers** (for Windows Server 2008).
Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware and Sound** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows 8).
Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel** → **Hardware** → **Devices and Printers** (for Windows Server 2012).
A list of available printers appears.
- 2 Right-click the printer that you selected when you sent the job for print, and then select **See what's printing**.
- 3 Select the printer driver.
A list of print jobs appears in the printer window.
- 4 Select the job you want to cancel.
- 5 Press <Delete> on the keyboard.

Direct Print Using the USB Storage Device

The Print From USB Memory feature allows you to print files stored in a USB storage device by operating from the operator panel.

 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for USB-Print is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the print function. If the Function Enabled setting for USB-Print is set to Off, the print function is disabled. For details, see "Function Enabled" on page 197.

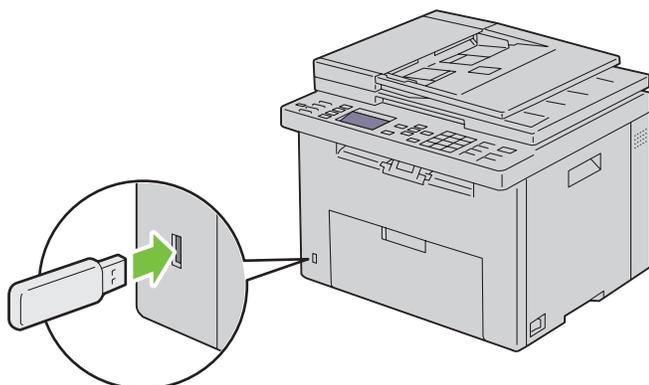
Supported File Formats

Files in the following file formats can be printed directly from a USB storage device.

- PDF
- TIFF
- JPEG

Printing a File in a USB Memory

- 1 Insert a USB storage device to the USB port of the printer.



USB Memory appears.

- 2 Ensure that Print From is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
Select Document appears.
- 3 Press the ▼ button until the desired file is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Select printing options as required.

 **NOTE:** You can print files scanned and stored using the Scan to USB Memory feature. Files saved without using the feature such as files created by user may not be printed properly.

Printing a Report Page

By using the Report / List menu, you can print a various of settings for your printer including printer settings, panel settings, job history, error history, color test page, protocol monitor, address book, and fax activity. For details about how to print reports or lists, see "Report / List" on page 174.

Copying

-  **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.
-  **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to On (Password) , you need to enter the four digit password to use the copy function. If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to Off, the copy function is disabled. For details, see "Function Enabled" on page 197.

Loading Paper for Copying

The instructions for loading print documents are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying. For more details, see "Loading Print Media" on page 211.

Preparing a Document

You can use the document glass or the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) to load an original document for copying, scanning and sending a fax. You can load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) documents for one job using the ADF or one sheet at a time using the document glass.

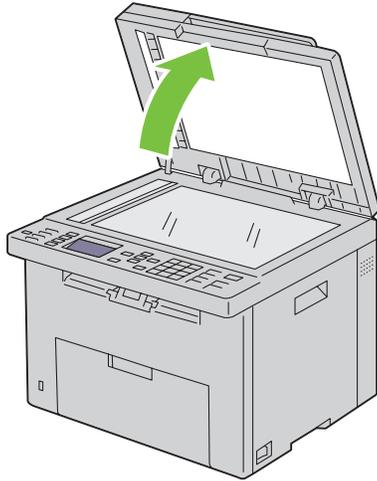
-  **WARNING:** Avoid loading documents that are smaller than 5.5 in. by 5.5 in. (139.7 mm by 139.7 mm) or larger than 8.5 in. by 14 in. (215.9 mm by 355.6 mm), different sizes or weights together, or booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents having other unusual characteristics in ADF.
-  **WARNING:** Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or thin paper, wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper or torn paper cannot be used in ADF.
-  **WARNING:** Do not use the documents with staples, paper clips or exposed to adhesives or solvent based materials such as glue, ink and correcting fluid in ADF.
-  **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for color or gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

Making Copies From the Document Glass

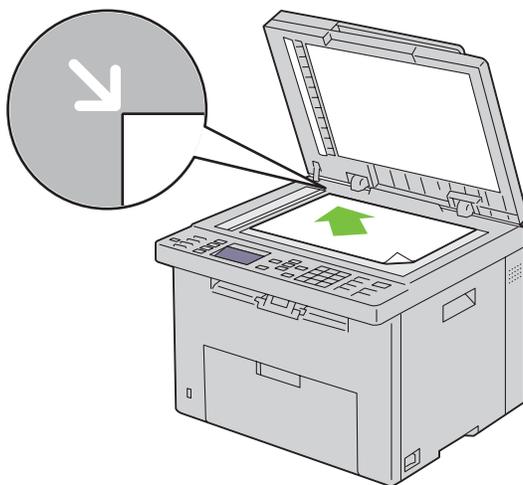
-  **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.
-  **NOTE:** Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.
-  **NOTE:** Contaminants on the document glass may cause black spots on the copy printout. For best results, clean the document glass before use. For more information, see "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 320.

To make a copy from the document glass:

- 1 Open the document cover.



- 2 Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



- 3 Close the document cover.

 **NOTE:** Leaving the document cover open while copying may affect the copy quality and increase the toner consumption.

 **NOTE:** If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the cover open.

- 4 Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, the contrast, and the image quality. For more information, see "Setting Copy Options" on page 235.

To clear the settings, use the AC (All Clear) button.

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

 **NOTE:** Press the  (Cancel) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

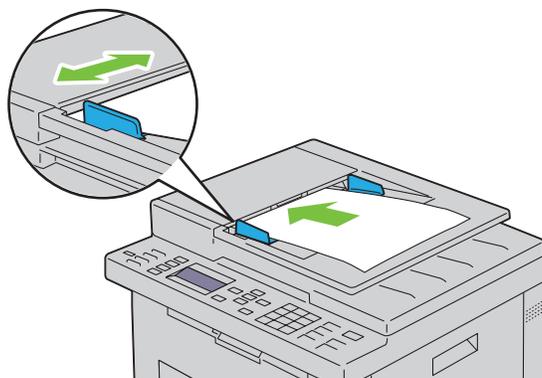
Making Copies From the ADF

 **CAUTION:** Do not load more than 35 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 35 sheets to be fed to the ADF output tray. The ADF output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 35 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

 **NOTE:** To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

 **NOTE:** A computer connection is not required for copying.

- 1 Load up to 35 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) documents face up on the ADF with top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



 **NOTE:** Ensure that you use the document guides before copying a legal-size document.

- 2 Customize the copy settings including the number of copies, copy size, contrast, and image quality. For more information, see "Setting Copy Options" on page 235.

To clear the settings, use the AC (All Clear) button.

- 3 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

 **NOTE:** Press the  (Cancel) button to cancel a copy job at any time while scanning a document.

Setting Copy Options

Set the following options for the current copy job before pressing the  (Start) button to make copies.

 **NOTE:** The copy options automatically return to their default status after copying.

Number of Copies

To specify the number of copies from 1 to 99.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Enter the number of copies using the numeric keypad to select the desired value.
- 4 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Color

To select mode for color or black and white copying.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

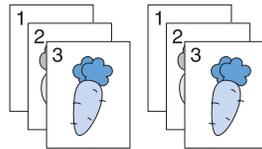
- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  (Color Mode) button to select the desired color mode.
- 4 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to On (Color Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the copy function. If the Function Enabled setting for Copy is set to Off, the copy function is disabled. For details, see "Function Enabled" on page 197.

Collated

To sort the copy output: For example, if you make two copies of three page documents, one complete three page document will print followed by the second complete document.

 **NOTE:** Copying documents with a large amount of data may exhaust available memory. If a memory shortage occurs, cancel the collating by turning Collated to Uncollated on the operator panel.



- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Ensure that Collated is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button to select the desired setting, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Uncollated*	Does not sort the copy job
Collated	Sorts the copy job
Auto	Automatically determines which output mode for the copy job

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options" on page 235.
- 6 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Reduce/Enlarge

To reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image, from 25 percent to 400 percent when you copy original documents from the document glass or ADF.

 **NOTE:** When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

 **NOTE:** This item is available only when **Multiple-Up** is set to **Off** or **Manual**.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Reduce/Enlarge** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button to select the desired settings, and then press the  (Set) button.

mm series

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

200%

A5->A4(141%)

A5->B5(122%)

100%*

B5->A5(81%)

A4->A5(70%)

50%

inch series

200%

Stmt->Lgl(154%)

Stmt->Ltr(129%)

100%*

Lgl->Ltr (78%)

Ldgr->Ltr(64%)

50%

 **NOTE:** You can also use the numeric keypad to input the desired zoom ratio from 25% to 400%, or press the  button to enlarge the zoom ratio or press the  button to reduce the zoom ratio in 1% intervals.

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Document Size

To specify the default document size:

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Document Size is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button to select the desired settings, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

A4 (210 x 297 mm) ^{*1}
A5 (148 x 210 mm)
B5 (182 x 257 mm)
Letter (8.5 x 11") ^{*1}
Folio (8.5 x 13")
Legal (8.5 x 14")
Executive (7.25 x 10.5")

^{*1} The default for Document Size varies depending on country specific factory default.

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Original Type

To select the copy image quality.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Original Type is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button to select the desired settings, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Text & Photo*	Used for documents with both text and photos.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Lighter/Darker

To adjust the contrast to make the copy lighter or darker than the original.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Lighter/Darker** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  or  button to select the desired settings, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighter2	Makes the copy lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the copy darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Sharpness

To adjust the sharpness to make the copy sharper or softer than the original.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Sharpness** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button to select the desired settings, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Sharpest	Makes the copy sharper than the original.
Sharper	
Normal*	Does not make the copy sharper or softer than the original.
Softer	Makes the copy softer than the original.
Softest	

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Auto Exposure

To suppress the background of the original to enhance text on the copy.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

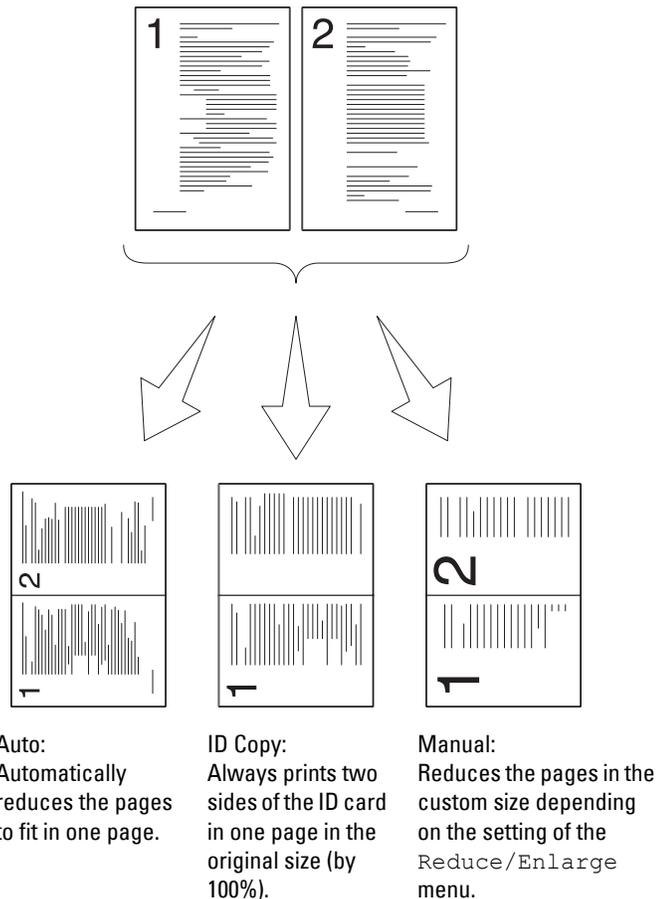
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Auto Exposure** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until **On** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Multiple-Up

To print two original images to fit onto one sheet of paper.



- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Multiple-Up is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button to select the desired setting, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Off*	Does not perform multiple-up printing.
Auto	Automatically reduces the original pages to fit onto one sheet of paper.
ID Copy	Prints the original pages onto one sheet of paper in the original size.
Manual	Prints the original pages onto the one sheet of paper in the size specified in Reduce/Enlarge.

- 5 If necessary, customize the copy settings including the number of copies, contrast, and image quality. See "Setting Copy Options" on page 235.
- 6 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.
When you are using the document glass and Multiple-Up is set to Auto, ID Copy, or Manual, the display prompts you for another page. Press the  button to select Yes or No, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 If you select Yes, press the  button to select Continue or Cancel, and then press the  (Set) button.

Margin Top/Bottom

To specify the top and bottom margins of the copy.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Margin Top/Bottom is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4 mm*/0.2 inch*	Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.
Available Range: 0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch	

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Margin Left/Right

To specify the left and right margins of the copy.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Margin Left/Right is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

4 mm*/0.2 inch* Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

Available Range:
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Margin Middle

To specify the middle margin of the copy.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Press the  (Copy) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Margin Middle is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  or  button or enter the desired value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

0 mm*/0.0 inch* Specify the value in increments of 1 mm/0.1 inch.

Available Range:
0-50 mm/0.0-2.0 inch

- 5 Press the  (Start) button to begin copying.

Changing the Default Settings

The COPY menu options, including contrast, and image quality can be set to the most frequently used modes. When you copy a document, the default settings are used unless they are changed by using the corresponding buttons on the operator panel.

 **NOTE:** While you set copy options, pressing the **AC (All Clear)** button cancels the changed settings and returns to the default status.

To create your own default settings:

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **System** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Ensure that **Defaults Settings** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Ensure that **Copy Defaults** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  or  button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Repeat steps 5 and 6, as needed.
- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

Scanning

Scanning Overview

 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Scan is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the scan function. If the Function Enabled setting for Scan is set to Off, the scan function is disabled. For details, see "Function Enabled" on page 197.

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

You can use your Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer to turn pictures and text into editable images on your computer.

PaperPort® is a program that allows you to organize, find and share all your paper and digital documents, and is supplied with your printer.

 **NOTE:** PaperPort may not be supported depending on the operating systems.

 **NOTE:** PaperPort application is available only on the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer. The licensed software application is not available for download from support.dell.com.

The resolution setting to use when you scan an item depends on the item type and how you plan to use the image or document after you scan it in to your computer. For the best results, use these recommended settings.

Type	Resolution
Documents	300 dpi black-and-white or 200 dpi grayscale or color
Documents of poor quality or that contain small text	400 dpi black-and-white or 300 dpi grayscale
Photographs and pictures	100–200 dpi color or 200 dpi grayscale
Images for an inkjet printer	150–300 dpi
Images for a high-resolution printer	300–600 dpi

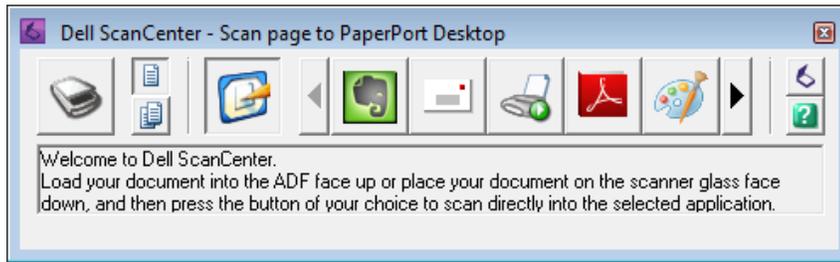
Scanning beyond these recommended resolutions may exceed the capabilities of the application. If you require a resolution above those recommended in the above table, you should reduce the size of the image by previewing (or pre-scan) and cropping before scanning the image.

 **NOTE:** You can use PaperPort's built-in Optical Character Recognition (OCR) software to copy text from scanned documents so that you can use and edit the text in any text editing, word processing, or spreadsheet program. The OCR process requires textual images scanned at 150–600 dpi and 300 dpi or 600 dpi is recommended for graphics.

If you prefer to use another application, such as Adobe® Photoshop®, you must assign the application to the printer by selecting it from the list of available applications through the **Select Software** button each time you start scanning. If you do not assign an application to the **Select Software** button, PaperPort is automatically selected when you start scanning.

Dell ScanCenter is a PaperPort application that allows you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without first running PaperPort. Dell ScanCenter runs as a separate application from the Microsoft® Windows® start menu and displays the Dell ScanCenter bar. For more information about using Dell ScanCenter, refer to the PaperPort's Help menu.

 **NOTE:** Dell ScanCenter may not be supported depending on the operating systems.



Icons on the **Dell ScanCenter** bar represent the programs that are limited to **PaperPort** and to **Dell ScanCenter**. To scan and send an item to a program, click the program icon and then scan the item. **Dell ScanCenter** automatically starts the selected program when the scan is complete.

Scanning From the Operator Panel - Scan to Application

NOTE: Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

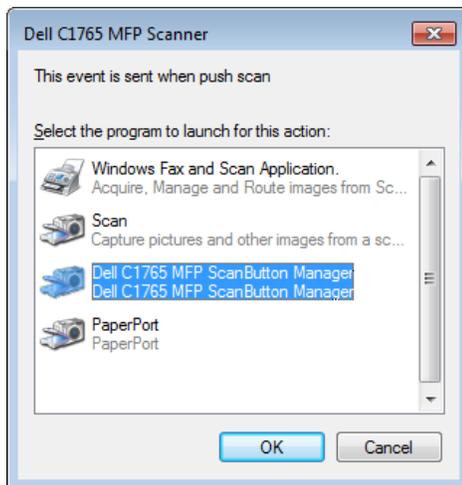
Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Scan) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Scan to Application is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Configure the scanning settings as necessary.
- 5 Press the  (Start) button.

The selected application window opens on your computer.

NOTE: If the following dialog box appears on your computer, select **Dell C1765 MFP Scan Button Manager**, and then click **OK**.



NOTE: Once you check the **Always use this program for this action** check box when selecting **Dell C1765 MFP Scan Button Manager**, the selected application is automatically used without displaying the program selection window.

NOTE: You must use **ScanButton Manager** on your computer to change the settings for scanning. For details, see "Quick Launch Utility" on page 292.

Scanning from the Operator Panel - Scan to WSD

If the printer is connected to a computer via network using Web Services on Devices (WSD), you can use the Scan to WSD function to send scanned images to a computer.

 **NOTE:** To use Scan to WSD, you need to setup connection using WSD.

 **NOTE:** WSD is supported only on Windows Vista®, Windows 7, and Windows 8.

Printer Setup for Scan to WSD

Setup the printer and computer for connection using WSD.

Checking the Printer Setting

To use the Scan to WSD function, WSD needs to be set to Enable. See "Protocol" on page 179 for details.

Setting Up the Computer

 **NOTE:** For Windows 8, the computer automatically connects the printer using WSD. There is no need to install the printer manually.

For Windows 7:

- 1 Click Start → Computer → Network
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**. The printer is connected using WSD.

For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click Start → Network
- 2 Right-click the icon for the printer, and then click **Install**.
- 3 Click **Continue**. The printer is connected using WSD.

Procedures for WSD Scan

- 1 Load the document(s) facing up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document facing down on the document glass.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Press the  (Scan) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Scan to WSD** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Ensure that **Scan to** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until the desired computer you want to send the scan job to is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button until the desired scan event is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Which application each scan event is associated with depends on the setting on the computer.

- 7 Press the  (Start) button.

Scanning Using the TWAIN Driver

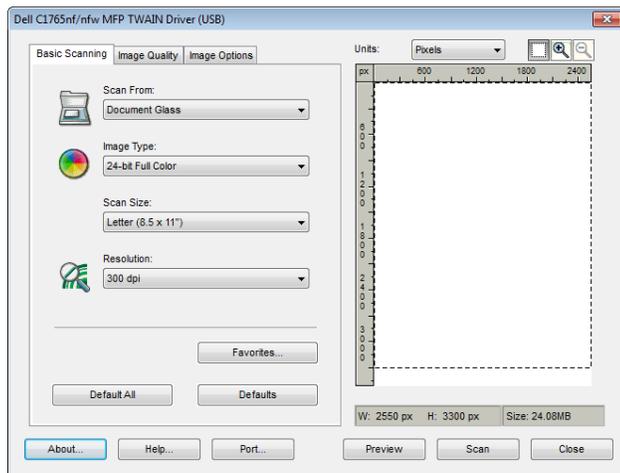
Your printer supports the Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN) driver for scanning images. TWAIN is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server® 2003, and Windows Server 2008, and works with various scanners.

 **NOTE:** Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

To scan an image from the **PaperPort**:

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 On the Windows **Start** menu, click **Nuance PaperPort 14** from **All Programs**, and then click **PaperPort** (for Windows 8, click the **PaperPort** icon on the **Start** screen).
- 3 In the **Desktop** tab, click **Scan Settings** in the **Function Pane** group.
- 4 Click **Select** in the **Scan or Get Photo** pane.
- 5 In the **Available Scanners** dialog box, select **TWAIN: Dell C1765 MFP Scanner** and then click **OK**.
- 6 Select your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to display the preview image.

 **NOTE:** The illustration may vary for different operating systems.



- 7 Select the desired properties from the **Image Quality** and **Image Options** tabs.
- 8 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
- 9 Follow the on-screen instructions to edit the picture after it is copied to your computer.

Scanning Using the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) Driver

Your printer also supports the WIA driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Windows XP and later operating systems and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan an image and easily manipulate those images without using additional software.

 **NOTE:** Ensure that the printer is connected to the computer using the USB cable.

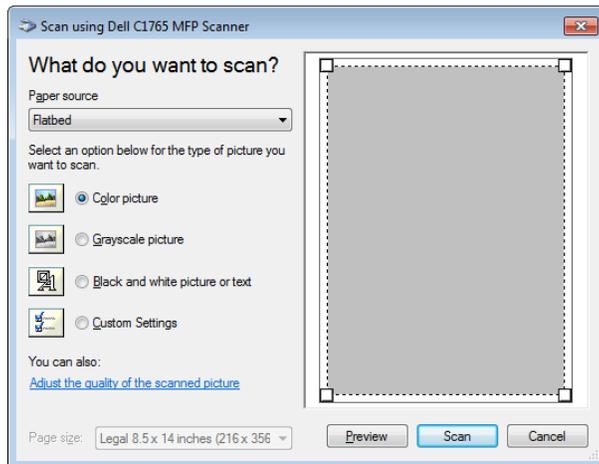
- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Start the drawing software, such as **Paint** for Windows.

 **NOTE:** When you use Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008, use **Windows Photo Gallery** instead of **Paint**.

- 3 Click **File** → **From Scanner or Camera** (**Paint** button → **From scanner or camera** for Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008 R2, and Windows Server 2012).

The **Scan using Dell C1765 MFP Scanner** window appears.

 **NOTE:** The illustration may vary for different operating systems.

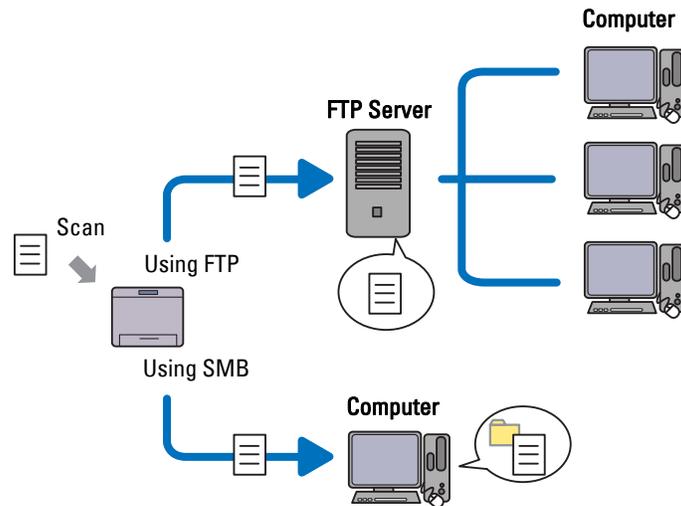


- 4 Select your scanning preferences and click **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** to display the **Advanced Properties** dialog box.
- 5 Select the desired properties including brightness and contrast, and then click **OK**.
- 6 Click **Scan** to start scanning.
- 7 Click **Save As** from the **File** menu.
- 8 Enter a picture name, and select a file format and destination to save the picture.

Scanning to a PC or Server via SMB/FTP

Overview

The **Scan to Server/Computer** feature allows you to scan documents and send the scanned document to a network computer via the FTP or SMB protocol.



You can select the kind of server and specify a destination to store the scanned document with the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** or **Address Book Editor**.

The following items are required to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.

- Using SMB

To transfer data via SMB, your computer must run on one of the following operating systems that includes folder sharing.

For Mac OS X, a shared user account is required on the Mac OS X.

- Windows XP
- Windows Vista
- Windows 7
- Windows 8
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2008
- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

- Using FTP

To transfer data via FTP, one of the following FTP servers and an account to the FTP server (login name and password) are required.

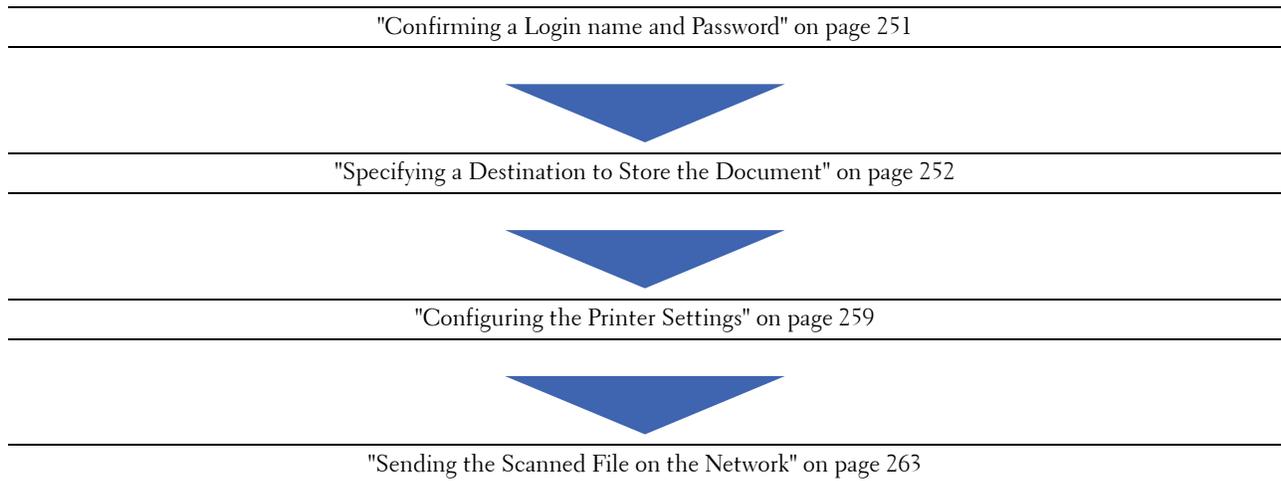
- Windows XP
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Server 3.0/4.0 or Internet Information Services 5.0/5.1
- Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, and Windows Server 2008 R2
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 6.0
- Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012
FTP service of Microsoft Internet Information Services 8.0

- Mac OS X

FTP service of Mac OS X 10.4.2/10.4.4/10.4.8/10.4.9/10.4.10/10.4.11/10.5/10.6/10.7

For information on how to configure the FTP service, contact your system administrator.

Follow the procedure below to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature.



Confirming a Login name and Password

When using SMB:

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user login account with a valid and non-empty password for authentication. Confirm a login user name and password.



If you do not use a password for your user login, you need to create a password on your User Login Account with the following procedure.

For Windows Vista and Windows 7:

- 1 Click Start → Control Panel.
- 2 Click User Accounts and Family Safety.
- 3 Click User Accounts.
- 4 Click Create a password for your account and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows 8 and Windows Server 2012

- 1 Right-click the bottom left corner of the screen, and then click **Control Panel**.
- 2 Click **Change PC settings**.
- 3 Click **Users**.
- 4 Click **Create a Password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows XP:

- 1 Click **start** → **Control Panel** → **User Accounts**.
- 2 Click **Change an account**.
- 3 Select your account.
- 4 Click **Create a password** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Double-click **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Windows Server 2008 R2:

- 1 Click **Start** → **Control Panel**.
- 2 Select **User Accounts**.
- 3 Click **User Accounts**.
- 4 Click **Create a password for your account** and add in a password for your user login account.

For Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

- 1 Click **System Preferences** → **Accounts**.
- 2 Select **Change Password**.
- 3 Enter a password for your user login account in **New password**.
- 4 Re-enter the password in **Verify**.

After you confirmed a login user name and password, go to "Specifying a Destination to Store the Document" on page 252.

When using FTP

The Scan to Computer/Server feature requires a user name and a password. For your user name and password, contact your system administrator.

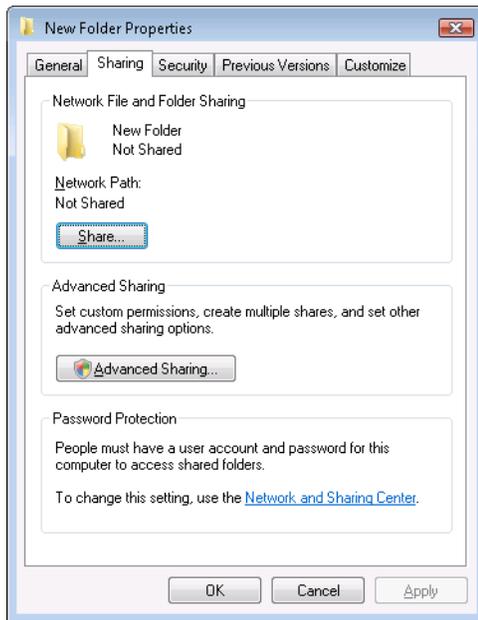
Specifying a Destination to Store the Document

When using SMB

Share a folder to store the scanned document using the following procedure.

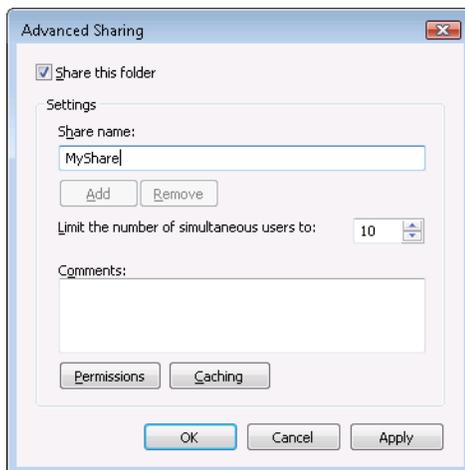
For Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 2012

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 2 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.

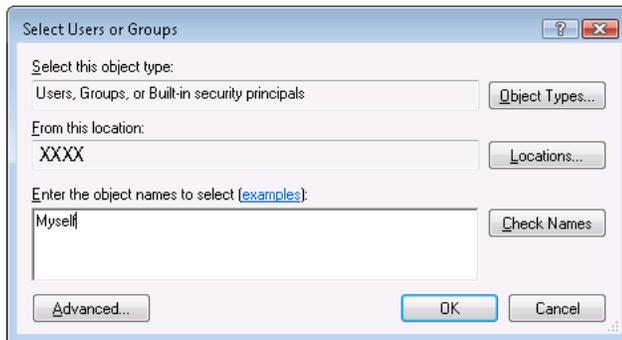


- 3 Click the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Advanced Sharing**.
- 4 Select the **Share this folder** check box.
- 5 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

 **NOTE:** Note down the shared name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.



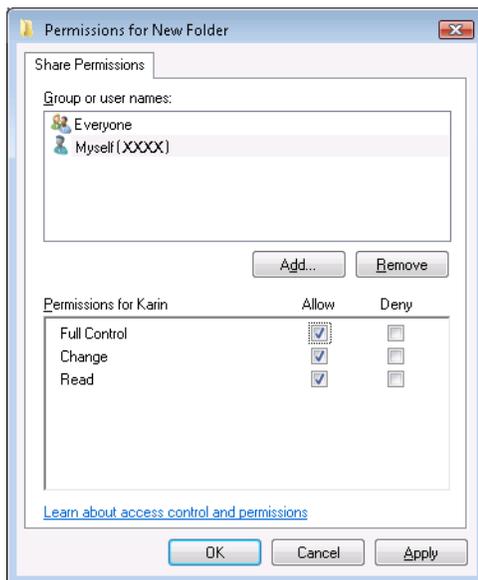
- 6 Click **Permissions** to give write permission for this folder.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, MySelf).



9 Click OK when you are done.

10 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document to this folder.

 **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.



11 Click OK.

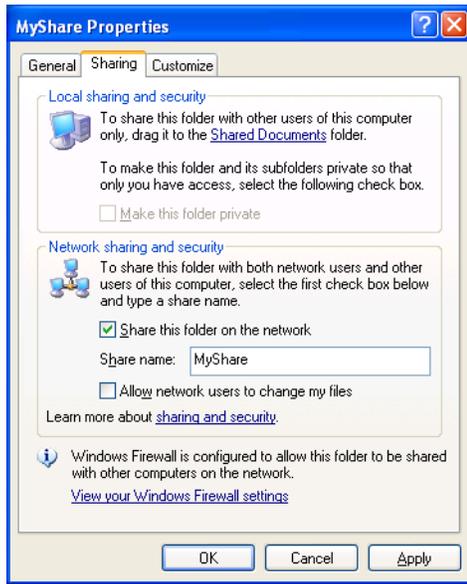
 **NOTE:** To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.
 Example: Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John
 You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 259.

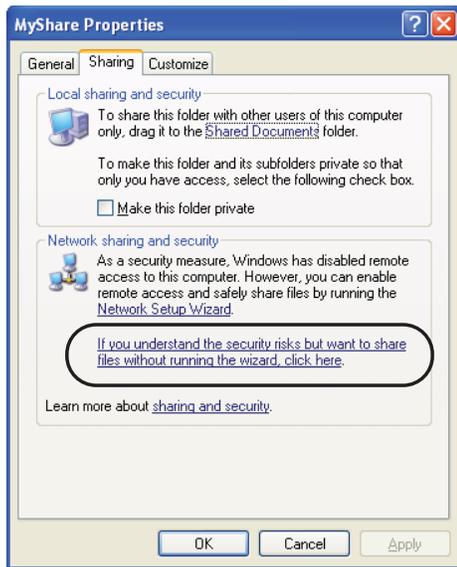
For Windows XP Home Edition:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).
- 2 Right-click on the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 3 Click on the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder on the network**.
- 4 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.

 **NOTE:** Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



 **NOTE:** When the following screen appears, click **If you understand the security risks but want to share files without running the wizard, click here**, then select **Just enable file sharing**, and then click **OK**.



5 Select **Allow network users to change my files**.

6 Click OK.



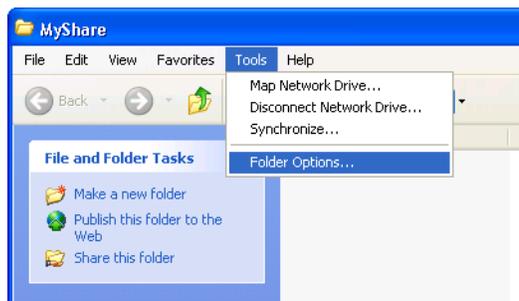
NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

Example: Folder name, MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John
You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory

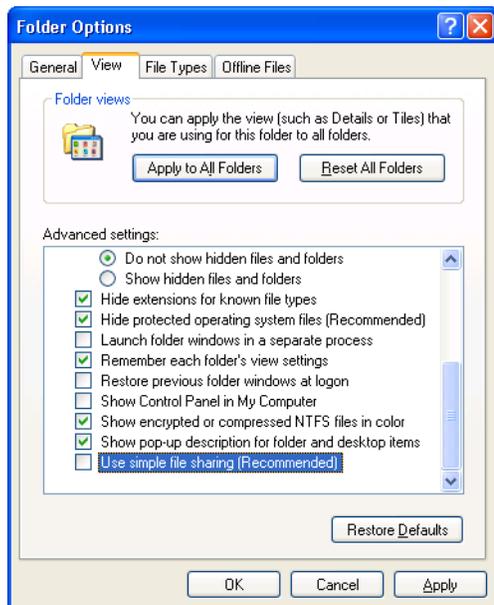
After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 259.

For Windows XP Professional Edition:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare) and double-click the folder.
- 2 Select Folder Options from Tools.



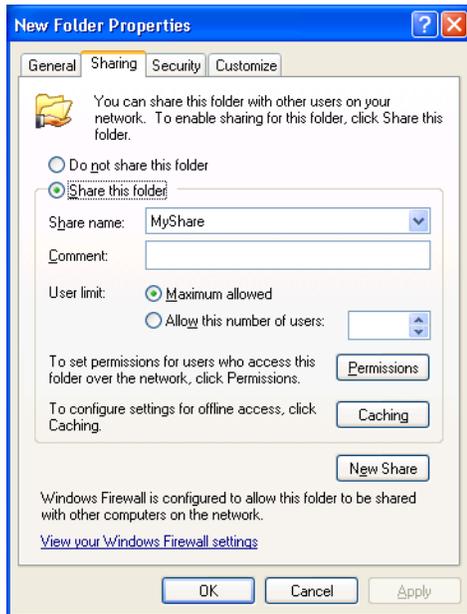
- 3 Click View tab, and then clear the checkbox of Use simple file sharing (Recommended).



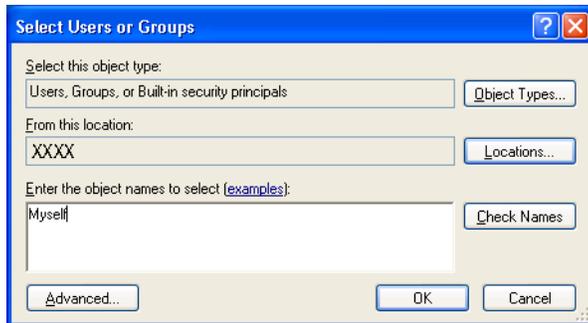
- 4 Click OK, and then close the window.
- 5 Right-click the folder, and then select **Properties**.
- 6 Select the **Sharing** tab, and then select **Share this folder**.
- 7 Enter a shared name in the **Share name** box.



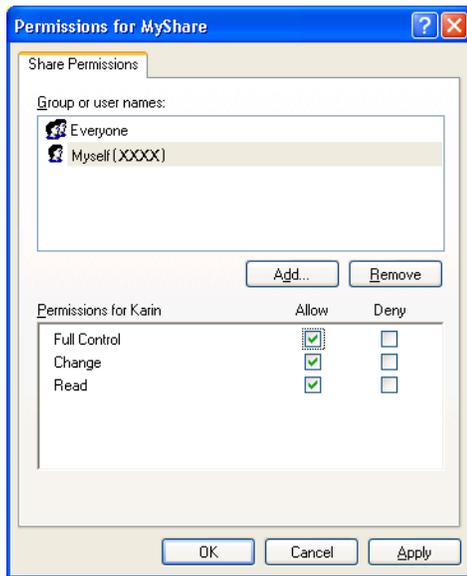
NOTE: Write down this shared name because you will use this name in the next setting procedure.



- 8 Click on **Permissions** to create a write permission for this folder.
- 9 Click **Add**.
- 10 Search user login name by clicking **Advanced**, or enter the user login name in the **Enter the object names to select** box and click **Check Names** to confirm (Example of user login name, MySelf).



- 11 Click **OK**.
-  **NOTE:** Do not use **Everyone** as the user login name.
- 12 Click the user login name that you have just entered. Select the **Full Control** check box. This will grant you permission to send the document into this folder.



13 Click OK.



NOTE: To add sub-folders, create new folders in the shared folder you have created.

Example: Folder name: MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John
You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.

After you created a folder, go to "Configuring the Printer Settings" on page 259.

For Mac OS X 10.4:

- 1 Select Go from the Finder menu, and then click Home.
- 2 Double-click Public.
- 3 Create a folder (Example of folder name, MyShare).



NOTE: Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 4 Open System Preferences, and then click Sharing.
- 5 Check the File Sharing check box and the Windows Sharing check box.

For Mac OS X 10.5/10.6:

- 1 Create a folder in the desired directory on your computer (Example of folder name, MyShare).



NOTE: Note down the folder name as you need to use this name in the next setting procedure.

- 2 Select the created folder, and then select Get Info from the File menu.
- 3 Check the Shared folder check box, and then close the window.
- 4 Open System Preferences, and then click Sharing.
- 5 Check the File Sharing check box, and then click Options.
- 6 Check the Share Files and folders using SMB check box and your account name.
- 7 Click Done.

When Using FTP

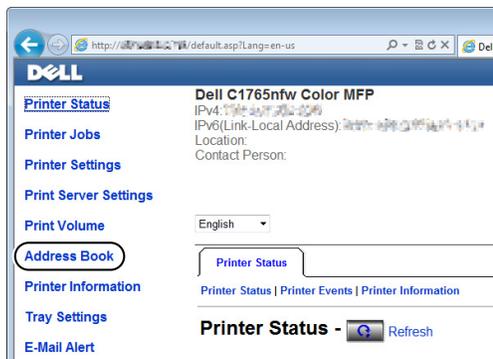
For a destination to store the document, contact your system administrator.

Configuring the Printer Settings

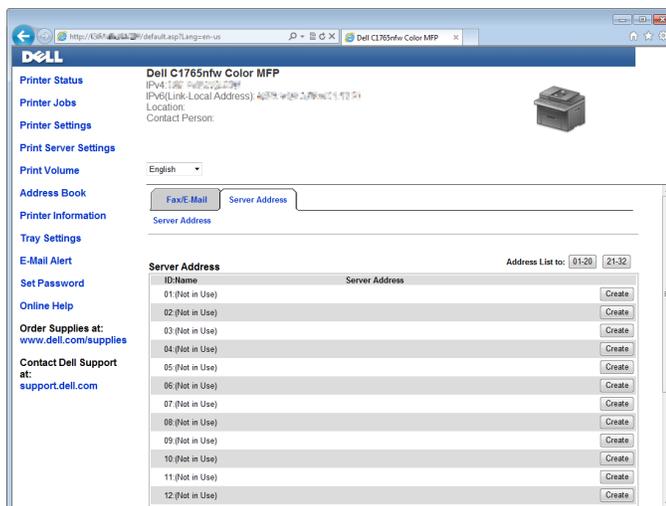
You can configure the printer settings to use the Scan to Server/Computer feature with the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool or Address Book Editor.

From the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar.
 **NOTE:** For details on how to check the IP address of the printer, see "Verifying the IP Settings" on page 55.
- 3 Click Go.
The printer's web page appears.
- 4 Click **Address Book** if a security login dialog box appears, type in the correct user name and password.
 **NOTE:** The default user name is admin, and the default password is left blank (NULL).



- 5 Click the **Server Address** tab.
- 6 Select any unused number and click **Create**.



The **Server Address** page appears.

Server Address

01 (New Registration)

1 **Name**
e.g. PeterShare, Sharedfolder

2 **Server Type** FTP SMB
FTP (ftp://Server Address/Server Path)
SMB (//Server Address/Share Name/Server Path)

3 **Server Address**
e.g. myPC, XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

4 **Share Name**
e.g. SMB (Share, Sharedfolder)

5 **Server Path**
e.g. FTP (pub, pub/share), SMB (finance, finance/Peter, finance/Peter/Sales)

6 **Server Port Number** FTP(21, 5000 - 65535), SMB(139, 5000 - 65535)

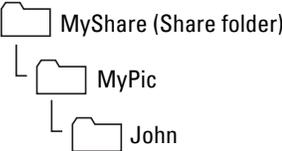
7 **Login Name**
e.g. FTP (anonymous, Peter), SMB (Peter, Domain/Peter)

8 **Login Password**

9 **Re-enter Password**

To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

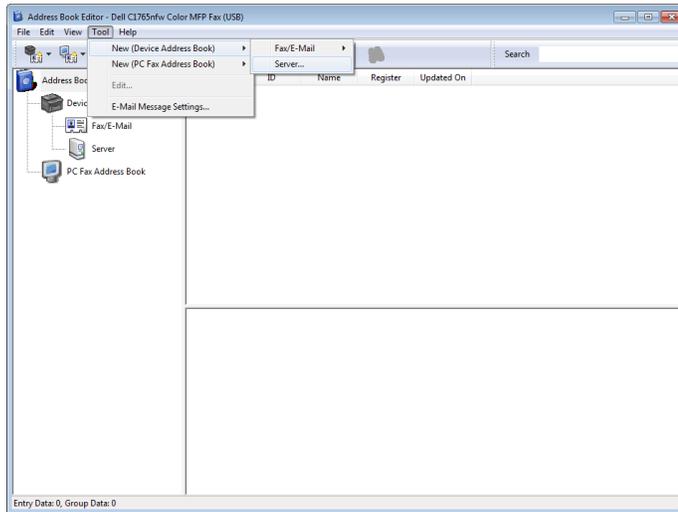
1	Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
2	Server Type	Select SMB if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer. Select FTP if you use a FTP server.
3	Server Address	Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. IPv4 and IPv6 are both supported. The following are examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For FTP: Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address (IPv4): 192.168.1.100 • For SMB: Server name: myhost IP address (IPv4): 192.168.1.100
4	Share Name	For SMB only. On the Windows operating system, enter the share name of the folder to store the scanned document on the recipient computer. On the Mac OS, enter the folder name to store the scanned document on the recipient computer.

5	Server Path	<p>For SMB</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.</p> <p>Example: Share Folder name, MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John</p> <p>You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <pre> graph TD MS[MyShare (Share folder)] --> MP[MyPic] MP --> J[John] </pre> </div> <p>In this case, enter the following item.</p> <p>Server Path: \MyPic\John</p> <p>For FTP</p> <p>Enter the server path to store the scanned document.</p>
6	Server Port Number	<p>Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.</p>
7	Login Name	<p>Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.</p>
8	Login Password	<p>Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.</p> <p>NOTE: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 251 for details on how to add a password in your user login account.)</p>
9	Re-enter Password	<p>Re-enter your password.</p>

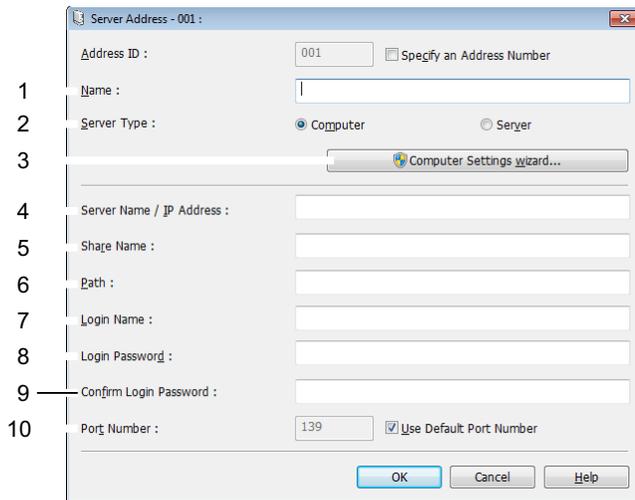
After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File on the Network" on page 263.

From the Address Book Editor

- 1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer → Address Book Editor. The Select Device window appears.
- 2 Select your printer from the list.
- 3 Click OK.
- 4 Click Tool → New (Device Address Book) → Server.



The Server Address dialog box appears.



To fill in the fields, enter the information as follows:

1	Name	Enter a friendly name that you want it to appear on the Server address book.
2	Server Type	Select Computer (SMB) if you store the document in a shared folder of your computer. Select Server (FTP) if you use a FTP server.
3	Computer Settings wizard	Clicking this button opens the wizard screen which guides you through several steps. When you complete the steps in the wizard, the items 4 to 10 are entered automatically. For details, click Help .

4	Sever Name / IP Address	<p>Enter a server name or IP address of your computer or the FTP server that you have shared out. IPv4 and IPv6 are both supported.</p> <p>The following are examples:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Computer (SMB): Server name: myhost IP address (IPv4): 192.168.1.100 • For Server (FTP): Server name: myhost.example.com (myhost: host name, example.com: domain name) IP address (IPv4): 192.168.1.100
5	Share Name	Enter the name of the shared folder on the recipient computer. For SMB only.
6	Path	<p>For SMB</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the share folder directly without creating any subfolder, leave the space blank.</p> <p>To store the scanned document in the folder you created under the share folder, enter the path as following.</p> <p>Example: Share Folder name, MyShare, Second-level folder name: MyPic, Third-level folder name: John</p> <p>You should now see MyShare\MyPic\John in your directory.</p> <div style="margin-left: 20px;"> <pre> graph TD MS[MyShare (Share folder)] --- MP[MyPic] MP --- J[John] </pre> </div> <p>In this case, enter the following item.</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">Path: \MyPic\John</p> <p>For FTP</p> <p>Enter the path to store the scanned document.</p>
7	Login Name	Enter the user account name that has access to the shared folder on your computer or FTP server.
8	Login Password	<p>Enter the password corresponding to the above login name.</p> <p>NOTE: Empty password is not valid in the Scan to Server/Computer feature. Ensure that you have a valid password for the user login account. (See "Confirming a Login name and Password" on page 251 for details on how to add a password in your user login account).</p>
9	Confirm Login Password	Re-enter your password.
10	Port Number	Enter the Server Port Number. If you are unsure, you can enter the default value of 139 for SMB and 21 for FTP.

After you configured settings, go to "Sending the Scanned File on the Network" on page 263.

Sending the Scanned File on the Network

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Scan) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Scan to Network is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Ensure that Scan to is highlighted, press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button to select Computer (Network) or Server (FTP), or Search Address book, and then press the  (Set) button.

Computer (Network): Stores the scanned image on the computer by using the SMB protocol.

Server (FTP): Stores the scanned image on the server by using the FTP protocol.

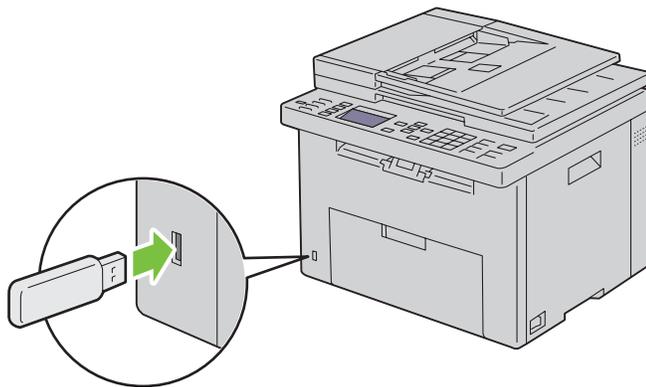
Search Address Book: Select the server address registered in Address Book.

- 6 Press the  button to select the destination to store the scanned file in, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Press the  (Start) button to send the scanned files.

Scanning to USB Storage Device

The Scan to USB Memory feature allows you to scan documents and save the scanned data to a USB storage device. To scan documents and save them, follow the steps below:

- 1 Insert the USB storage device into the USB port on your printer.



- 2 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 3 Press the  (Scan) button.
- 4 Ensure that Scan to USB Memory is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until the your desired folder is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  (Start) button.

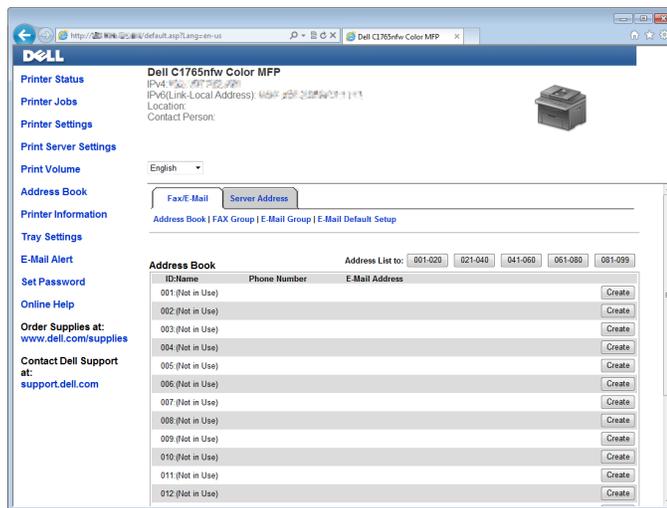
Sending an E-Mail with the Scanned Image

To send an e-mail attached with the scanned image from your printer, follow the steps below:

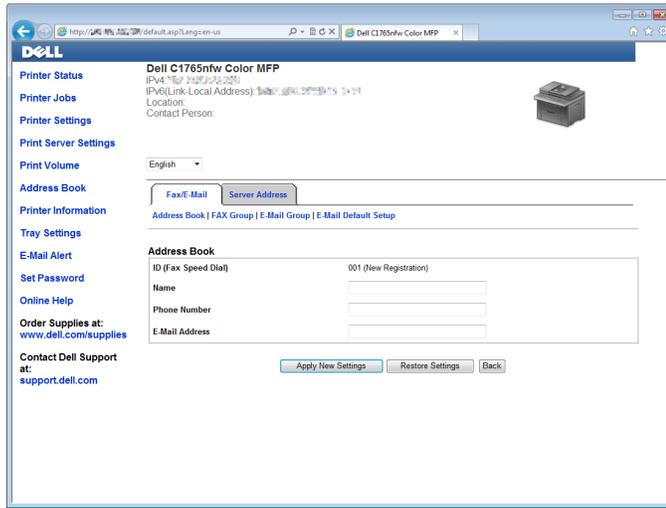
- Set up **E-Mail Server Settings** of **E-Mail Alert** on the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. See "E-Mail Alert" on page 100 for more details. For information about your e-mail server, contact your system administrator or your local Internet service provider (ISP).
- Setup the e-mail address book through the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. See "Setting an E-Mail Address Book" on page 265 for more details.

Setting an E-Mail Address Book

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Type in the IP address of the printer in the address bar and click **Go**. The printer's Web page appears.
- 3 Click the **Address Book** tab.
The login dialog box appears.
- 4 Type in the administrator login ID and password registered on the printer.
- 5 Click **Address Book**.



6 Click Create.



- 7 Enter a name and e-mail address in the **Name** and **E-Mail Address** fields.
- 8 Click **Apply New Settings**.

Sending an E-Mail With the Scanned File

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Scan) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Scan to E-Mail** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Ensure that **E-Mail to** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button to select the setting listed below, and then press the  (Set) button.

Keypad: Type the e-mail address directly and then press the  (Set) button.

Address Book: Select the e-mail address registered in the E-Mail Address Book, and then press the  (Set) button.

E-Mail Group: Select the e-mail group registered in the E-Mail Groups, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Users need to be registered before you can select **Address Book** on the operator panel.

- 6 Press the  (Start) button to send e-mail.

Faxing

 **NOTE:** If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to On (Password), you need to enter the four digit password to use the fax function. If the Function Enabled setting for Fax is set to Off, the fax function is disabled. For details, see "Function Enabled" on page 197.

 **NOTE:** If the Panel Lock Set is set to Enable, you need to enter the four digit password to enter the Admin Menu.

Configuring Fax Initial Settings

 **NOTE:** The following settings can be configured also using **Advance Tools** on **Easy Setup Navigator**.

Setting Your Country

You need to set the country where your printer is used for using the fax service on the printer.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until System is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until Fax Settings is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until Country is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button to select the country where the printer is used, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, press the  button to select Yes, and then press the  (Set) button.

The printer restarts automatically to apply the settings.

 **NOTE:** In case of either one, when you configure the country setting, the information, which is registered to the device, is initialized.

Setting the Printer ID

In most countries, you are required by law to indicate your fax number on any fax you send. The printer ID, containing your telephone number and name or company name, will be printed at the top of each page sent from your printer.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until System is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until Fax Settings is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until Fax Number is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Enter your fax number using the number keypad.

 **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the  (Backspace) button to delete the last digit.

- 7 Press the  (Set) button when the number on the display is correct.
- 8 Press the  button until Fax Header Name is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 9 Enter your name or company name using the numeric keypad.

You can enter alphanumeric characters using the numeric keypad, including special symbols by pressing the 1, *, and # buttons.

For details on how to use the numeric keypad to enter alphanumeric characters, see "Using the Numeric Keypad to Enter Characters" on page 94.

- 10 Press the ✓ (Set) button when the name on the display is correct.
- 11 To return to the previous screen, press the ↶ (Back) button.

Setting the Time and Date

 **NOTE:** It may be necessary to reset the correct time and date if loss of power to the printer occurs.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until `Date & Time` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Ensure that `Set Date` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 7 Enter the correct date using the numeric keypad, or press the ✓ button to select the correct date.

 **NOTE:** If you make a mistake while entering numbers, press the < button to re-enter the digit.

- 8 Press the ✓ (Set) button when the date on the display is correct.
- 9 Press the ✓ button until `Set Time` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 10 Enter the correct time using the numeric keypad, or press the ✓ button to select the correct time.
- 11 Press the ✓ (Set) button when the time on the display is correct.
- 12 To return to the previous screen, press the ↶ (Back) button.

Changing the Clock Mode

You can set the current time using either the 12-hour or the 24-hour format.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until `System Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until `Date & Time` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Press the ✓ button until `Date Format` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 7 Press the ✓ button until the desired format is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the ↶ (Back) button.

Setting Sounds

Speaker Volume

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the ✓ button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 3 Press the ✓ button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 4 Press the ✓ button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 5 Press the ✓ button until `Line Monitor` is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.
- 6 Press the ✓ button until the desired volume is highlighted, and then press the ✓ (Set) button.

- 7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Ringer Volume

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until `Ring Tone Volume` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button until the desired volume is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Specifying the Fax Settings

Changing the Fax Settings Options

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  or  button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad.
- 7 Press the  (Set) button to save the selection.
- 8 If necessary, repeat steps 5 to 7.
- 9 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

Available Fax Settings Options

You can use the following settings options for configuring the fax system:

Option	Description	
Receive Mode	Telephone	Automatic fax reception is turned off. You can receive a fax by picking up the handset of the external telephone, and then pressing the remote receive code.
	Fax	Automatically receives faxes.
	Telephone/Fax	When the printer receives an incoming fax, the external telephone rings for the time specified in Auto Rec TEL/FAX , and then the printer automatically receives a fax. If an incoming call is not a fax, the printer beeps from the internal speaker indicating that the call is a telephone call.
	Ans Machine/Fax	The printer can share a telephone line with an answering machine. In this mode, the printer will monitor the fax signal and pick up the line if there are fax tones. If the phone communication is using serial transmission in your country (such as Germany, Sweden, Denmark, Austria, Belgium, Italy, France and Switzerland), this mode is not supported.
	DRPD	Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) option, a distinctive ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. After the telephone company has provided a separate number for faxing with a distinctive ring pattern, configure the fax setup to monitor for that specific ring pattern.
Auto Rec Fax	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after receiving an incoming call.	
Auto Rec TEL/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external telephone receives an incoming call.	
Auto Rec Ans/FAX	Sets the interval at which the printer goes into the fax receive mode after the external answering machine receives an incoming call.	
Line Monitor	Sets the volume of the line monitor, which audibly monitors a transmission through the internal speaker until a connection is made.	
Ring Tone Volume	Sets the volume of the ring tone, which indicates that an incoming call is a telephone call through the internal speaker when Receive Mode is set to Telephone/Fax .	
Line Type	Sets the line type.	
Tone/Pulse	Sets the dialing type.	
Resend Delay	Specifies the interval between transmission attempts.	
Redial Attempts	Specifies the number of redial attempts to make when the destination fax number is busy. If you enter 0, the printer will not redial.	
Redial Delay	Specifies the interval between redial attempts.	
Junk Fax Setup	Sets whether to reject faxes sent from unwanted numbers by accepting faxes only from the fax numbers registered in the Phone Book.	
Remote Receive	Sets whether to receive a fax by pressing a remote receive code on the external telephone.	
Remote Rcv Tone	Specifies the remote receive code in two digits to start Remote Receive .	
Fax Header	Sets whether to print the information of sender on the header of faxes.	
Fax Header Name	Sets the name of sender to be printed on the header of faxes. Up to 30 alphanumeric characters can be entered.	
Fax Number	Sets the fax number of the printer to be printed on the header of faxes.	
Fax Cover Page	Sets whether to attach a cover page to faxes.	
DRPD Pattern	Sets the DRPD setting from Pattern 1 to Pattern 7 . DRPD is a service provided by some telephone companies.	

Option	Description
Forward Settings	Sets whether to forward incoming faxes to a specified destination.
Fax Fwd Number	Specifies the fax number of the destination to which incoming faxes will be forwarded.
Prefix Dial	Specifies whether to set a prefix dial number.
Prefix Dial Num	Sets a prefix dial number of up to five digits. This number dials before any auto dial number is started. It is useful for accessing the Private Automatic Branch Exchange (PABX).
Discard Size	Sets whether to discard text or images at the bottom of a fax page when the entire page does not fit onto the output paper. Selecting Auto Reduction automatically reduces the fax page to fit it onto the output paper, and does not discard any images or text at the bottom of the page.
ECM	Sets whether to enable the ECM. To use the ECM, the remote machines must also support the ECM.
Modem Speed	Specifies the fax modem speed when a fax transmission or reception error occurs.
Fax Activity	Sets whether to automatically print a fax activity report after every 50 incoming and outgoing fax communications.
Fax Transmit	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Fax Broadcast	Sets whether to print a transmission report after every fax transmission to multiple destinations or only when an error occurs.
Protocol Monitor	Sets whether to print a protocol monitor report after every fax transmission or only when an error occurs.
Country	Sets the country where the printer is used.

Prefix Dial

 **NOTE:** Prefix Dial only supports the environment where you send a fax to the external line number. To use Prefix Dial, you must do the following from the operator panel.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **System** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Admin Menu** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until **Fax Settings** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until **Line Type** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button until **PBX** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Press the  (Back) button to return to the previous menu.
- 8 Press the  button until **Prefix Dial** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 9 Press the  button until **On** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 10 Press the  (Back) button to return to the previous menu.
- 11 Press the  button until **Prefix Dial Num** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 12 Enter an up-to-five-digit prefix number from 0-9, *, and #.
- 13 Press the  (Set) button when the prefix dial number on the display is correct.
- 14 Reboot the printer by turning the power switch off and then on.

Sending a Fax

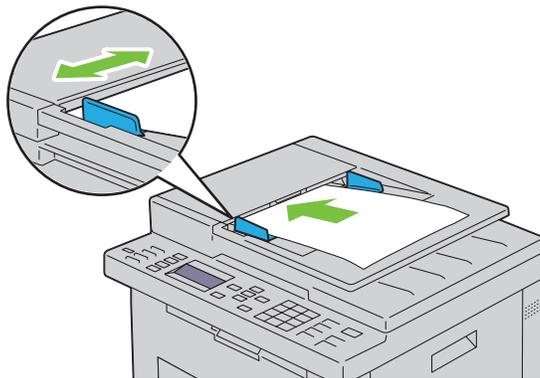
You can fax data from your printer. You can also directly fax data transferred from the computer running a Microsoft® Windows® operating system.

Loading an Original Document on the ADF

CAUTION: Do not load more than 35 sheets into the ADF or allow more than 35 sheets to be fed to the ADF output tray. The ADF output tray should be emptied before it exceeds 35 sheets or your original documents may be damaged.

NOTE: To get the best scan quality, especially for gray scale images, use the document glass instead of the ADF.

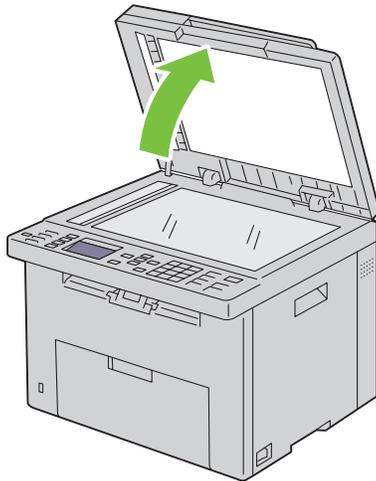
- 1 Place the document(s) face up on the ADF with the top edge of the documents in first. Then adjust the document guides to the correct document size.



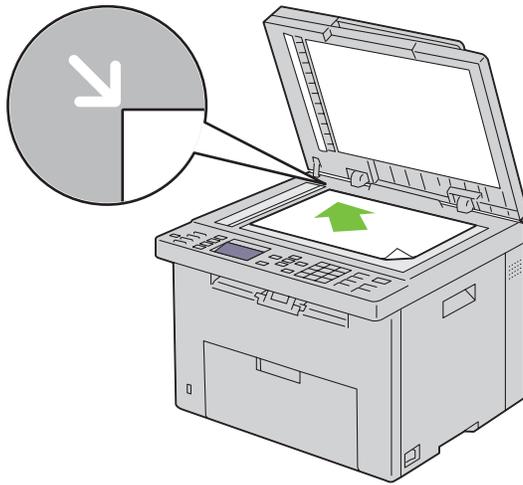
- 2 Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 273.

Loading an Original Document on the Document Glass

- 1 Open the document cover.



- Place the document face down on the document glass and align it with the registration guide on the top left corner of the glass.



- Adjust the document resolution, referring to "Resolution" on page 273.
- Close the document cover.

NOTE: Ensure that no document is in the ADF. If any document is detected in the ADF, it takes priority over the document on the document glass.

NOTE: If you are faxing a page from a book or magazine, lift the document cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start faxing with the cover open.

Resolution

To specify the resolution level to be used for fax transmission:

- Press the  (Fax) button.
- Press the  button until Resolution is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- Press the  button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

NOTE: Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Standard*	Suitable for documents with normal sized characters.
Fine	Suitable for documents containing small characters or thin lines or documents printed using a dot-matrix printer.
Super Fine	Suitable for documents containing extremely fine detail. The super fine mode is enabled only if the remote machine also supports the super fine resolution.
Ultra Fine	Suitable for documents containing photographic images.

NOTE: Faxes scanned in the Super Fine mode transmit at the highest resolution supported by the receiving device.

Original Type

To select the default original type for the current fax job:

- Press the  (Fax) button.
- Press the  button until Original Type is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

- 3 Press the  button to select the desired setting, and then press the  (Set) button.

Text	Suitable for documents with text.
Photo	Suitable for documents with photos.

Lighter/Darker

To adjust the contrast to make the fax lighter or darker than the original:

- 1 Press the  (Fax) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **Lighter/Darker** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  or  button to select the desired setting, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Values marked by an asterisk (*) are the factory default menu settings.

Lighter2	Makes the fax lighter than the original. Works well with dark print.
Lighter1	
Normal*	Works well with standard typed or printed documents.
Darker1	Makes the fax darker than the original. Works well with light print or faint pencil markings.
Darker2	

Sending a Fax Automatically

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF:

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

- 2 Press the  (Fax) button.
- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 273. If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 274.
- 4 You can select a fax number in one of the following ways:

- Ensure that **Fax to** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button. Press the  button until **Phone Book** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button. Press the  button to select the recipients.
- Press the **One Touch Dial** button.
- Press the  (Contacts) button, select **All Entries**, **Group Dial**, or **Search** using the  button, and then press the  (Set) button.

All Entries	Displays a list of registered fax numbers. Press the  button to select the recipients.
Group Dial	Press the  button to select the recipients.
Search	Searches a fax number from the Phone Book. Enter the text you want to search, and then press the  (Set) button. Press the  button to select the recipients.

- Press the  (Redial/Pause) button to redial.
- Press the  (Speed Dial) button. Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Before you use the **One Touch Dial** button, you need to register a number for the speed dial. For more information on how to store the number, see "Automatic Dialing" on page 282.

5 Press the  (Start) button.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Press the  button to select Yes or No, and then press the  (Set) button.

6 The number is dialed and then the printer begins sending the fax when the remote fax machine is ready.

 **NOTE:** Press the  (Cancel) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

Sending a Fax Manually

1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.

OR

Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.

For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.

2 Press the  (Fax) button.

3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 273.

If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 274.

4 Press the  button until OnHook is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

5 Press the  button until On is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

6 Enter the fax number of the remote fax machine using the numeric keypad.

- If the document is loaded on the ADF, press the  (Start) button.
- If the document is not loaded on the ADF, press the  (Start) button, press the  button until the desired setting appears, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** Press the  (Cancel) button and the  (Set) button to cancel the fax job at any time while sending the fax.

Confirming Transmissions

When the last page of your document has been sent successfully, the printer beeps and returns to the standby mode.

If something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display.

If you receive an error message, press the  (Cancel) button to clear the message and try to send the document again.

You can set your printer to print a confirmation report automatically after each fax transmission. For more information, see "Printing a Report" on page 287.

Automatic Redialing

If the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the printer will automatically redial the number every minute based on the number set in the redial settings.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 270.

 **NOTE:** The printer will not automatically redial a number that was busy when the number was manually entered.

Sending a Delayed Fax

The Delayed Start mode can be used to save scanned documents for transmission at a specified time in order to take advantage of lower long distance rates.

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 Press the  (Fax) button.
- 3 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 273.
If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 274.
- 4 Press the  button until **Delayed Start** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until **On** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Enter the start time using the numeric keypad or press the  or  button to select the start time, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Press the  button until **Fax to** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 8 Ensure that **Keypad** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 9 Enter the number of the remote machine using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.
You can also use speed dial or group dial numbers. For more information, see "Automatic Dialing" on page 282.
Press the  (Start) button to begin faxing.

Once Delayed Start mode is activated, your printer stores all the documents to be faxed to its memory and sends them at the specified time. After faxing in the Delayed Start mode is complete, the data in the memory is cleared.

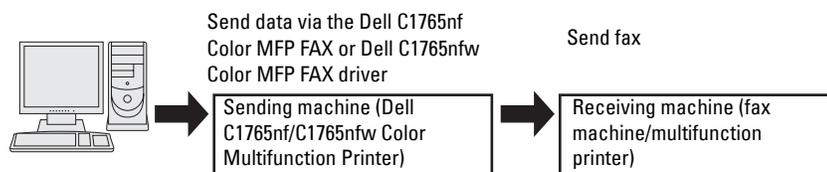
 **NOTE:** If you turn off and on the printer, the stored documents are sent as soon as the printer is activated.

Sending a Fax from the Driver (Direct Fax)

You can send a fax directly from your computer by using the driver.

 **NOTE:** Only black and white faxes can be sent using Direct Fax.

Example

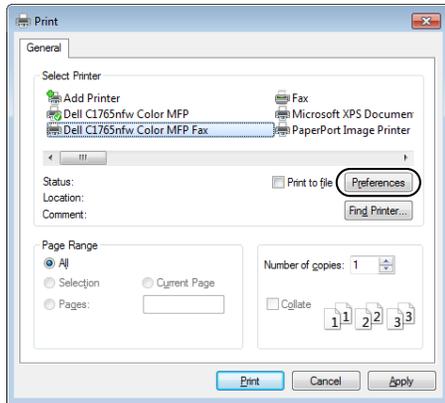


For Windows:

 **NOTE:** The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

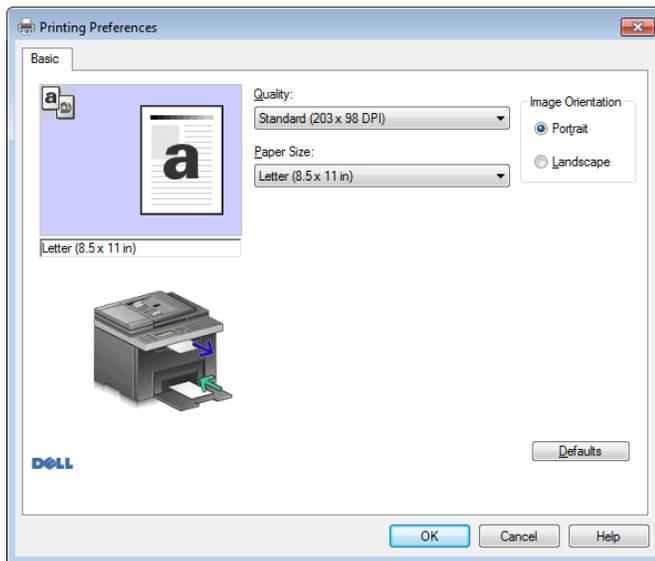
 **NOTE:** To use this feature, you must install the fax driver.

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell C1765nf Color MFP FAX** or **Dell C1765nfw Color MFP FAX**.
- 3 Click **Preferences**.



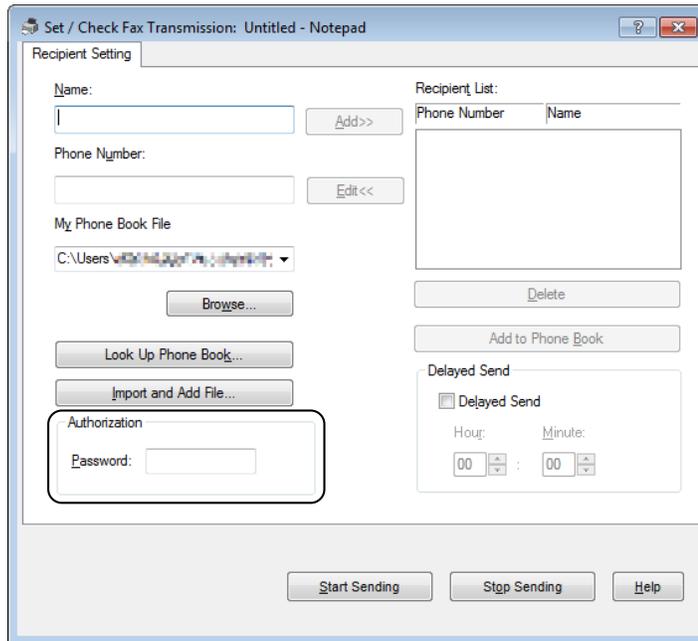
- 4 The **Printing Preferences** dialog box appears. Specify the fax settings. For more information, click the **Help** of the driver.

 **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.



- 5 Click **OK** to close the **Printing Preferences** dialog box.
- 6 Click **Print**. The **Set / Check Fax Transmission:** dialog box appears.

- 7 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:
- Enter a name and phone number directly.
 - Select a recipient from a phone book saved on your computer.
 - Select a recipient from a database other than a phone book or address book.
- For more information on how to specify the destination, see the **Help** of the driver.



 **NOTE:** Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

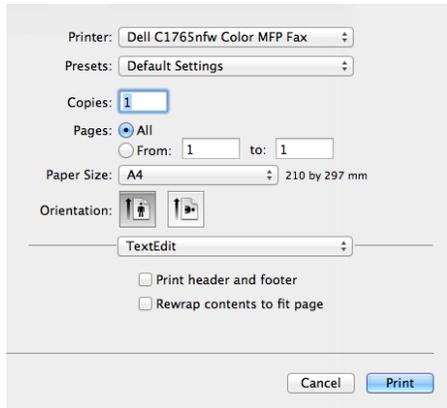
- 8 Click **Start Sending**.

For Macintosh:

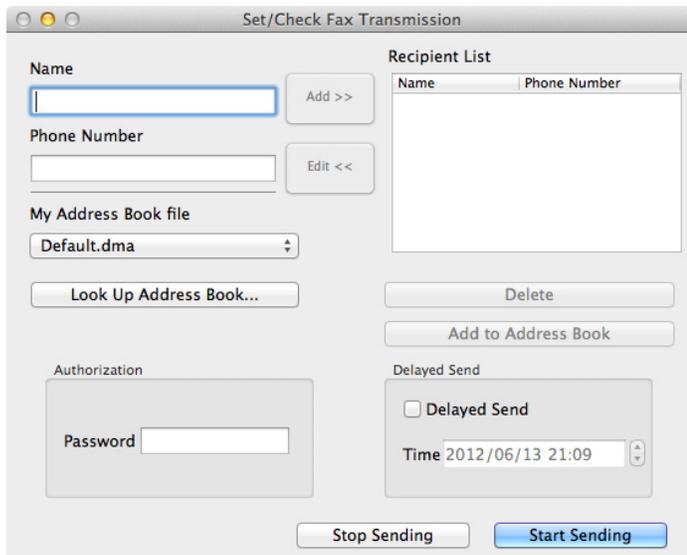
 **NOTE:** The names of the windows and the buttons may be different from those given in the following procedure depending on the application you are using.

 **NOTE:** When using a USB connection on Mac OS 10.4.x, upgrade Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) software to version 1.2.12 or later. You can download it from CUPS web site.

- 1 Open the file you want to send by fax.
- 2 Open the print dialog box from the application, and then select **Dell C1765nf Color MFP Fax** or **Dell C1765nf Color MFP Fax**.



- 3 Specify the fax settings.
 **NOTE:** The settings done here are only applied to a single fax job.
- 4 Click **Print**. The **Fax Recipient** dialog box appears.
- 5 Specify the destination for the recipient in one of the following ways:
 - Enter a name and phone number directly.
 - Select a recipient from a phone book saved on your computer.





NOTE: Enter the password in the **Password** field in the **Authorization** area before sending a fax if the Fax service is locked with a password.

6 Click OK.

Receiving a Fax

About Receiving Modes



NOTE: To use the Telephone/Fax mode or Ans Machine/Fax mode, attach an answering machine to the phone connector (☎^{PHONE}) on the back of your printer.

When the memory is full, the fax is received in the Telephone mode.

Loading Paper for Receiving Faxes

The instructions for loading paper in the PSI are the same whether you are printing, faxing, or copying, except that faxes can only be printed on Letter-, A4-, or Legal-sized paper. For details about loading paper, see "Loading Print Media" on page 211. For details about setting the paper type and size in the PSI, see "Print Media Guidelines" on page 203.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Fax Mode

Your printer is preset to the fax mode at the factory.

If you receive a fax, the printer automatically goes into the fax mode after a specified period of time and receives the fax.

To change the interval at which the printer goes into the fax mode after receiving an incoming call, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 270.

Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode

To receive a fax manually, pick up the handset of the external telephone, and follow the instructions below.

- 1 Press the  (Fax) button when you hear fax tones on the external telephone.
OffHook appears.
- 2 Press the  (Start) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Manual Receive is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
The printer receives the document.

Receiving a Fax Automatically in the Telephone/Fax or Ans Machine/Fax Mode

To use the Telephone/Fax mode or Ans Machine/Fax mode, you must attach an external telephone to the phone connector (☎^{PHONE}) on the back of your printer.

If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message as it would normally. If your printer hears a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive a fax.



NOTE: If you have set your printer to Auto Answer Fax and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to your printer, your printer will automatically go into the Fax mode after a predefined time.

Receiving a Fax Manually Using an External Telephone

This feature works best when you are using an external telephone connected to the phone connector (☎^{PHONE}) on the back of your printer. You can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the external telephone without having to go to the printer.

When you receive a call on the external telephone and hear fax tones, press the two-digit number on the external telephone.

The printer receives the document.

Press the buttons slowly in sequence. If you still hear the fax tone from the remote machine, try pressing the two-digit keys once again.

The remote receive code is set to `Off` at the factory. You can change the two-digit number to whatever you choose. For details on changing the code, see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 270.

You can also receive the fax by pressing the  (Fax) button when you hear the fax tones on the external telephone. See "Receiving a Fax Manually in the Telephone Mode" on page 280.

 **NOTE:** Set the dialing system of your external telephone to DTMF.

Receiving Faxes Using the DRPD Mode

The DRPD is a telephone company service which allows a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. The particular number someone uses to call you on is identified by different ringing patterns, which consist of various combinations of long and short ringing sounds.

Before using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection option, Distinctive Ring service must be installed on your telephone line by the telephone company. To set up Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection, you will need another telephone line at your location, or someone available to dial your FAX number from outside.

To set up the DRPD:

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until `Fax Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until `DRPD Pattern` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

To receive faxes in the DRPD, you need to set the menu to DRPD mode; see "Available Fax Settings Options" on page 270.

Your printer provides seven DRPD patterns. If this service is available from your telephone company, ask your telephone company which pattern you need to select to use this service.

Receiving Faxes in the Memory

Since your printer is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying, printing, or run out of paper or toner, your printer stores incoming faxes in the memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying, printing, or re-supply the consumables, the printer automatically prints the fax.

Polling Receive

You can receive faxes from the remote fax machine when you want to receive it.

- 1 Press the  (Fax) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `Polling Receive` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `On` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Enter the fax number of the remote machine, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** For information on how to enter the fax number of the remote machine, see "Sending a Fax Manually" on page 275 or "Sending a Fax Automatically" on page 274.

- 5 Press the  (Start) button.

Automatic Dialing

Speed Dialing

You can store up to 99 frequently dialed numbers in speed dial locations (01–99).

When the speed dial job specified in the delayed fax or redial exists, you cannot change the speed dial number from the operator panel or Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.

Storing a Number for Speed Dialing

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until `System` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until `Admin Menu` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until `Phone Book` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Ensure that `Speed Dial` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button until the desired speed dial number between 01 and 99 is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Ensure that `Name` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 8 Enter the name, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 9 Ensure that `Phone Number` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 10 Enter the number you want to store using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.
To insert a pause between numbers, press the  (Redial/Pause) button. "-" appears on the display.
- 11 Ensure that `Apply Settings` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 12 When `Are You Sure?` is displayed, ensure that `Yes` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 13 To store more fax numbers, repeat steps 6 to 12.
- 14 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

Sending a Fax Using a Speed Dial

- 1 Load the document(s) face up with top edge in first into the ADF.
OR
Place a single document face down on the document glass, and close the document cover.
For details about loading a document, see "Loading an Original Document on the ADF" on page 272.
- 2 To enter the speed dial number do either of the following after pressing the  (Fax) button:
 - Ensure that `Fax to` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button. Press the  button until `Speed Dial` is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - Press the  (Speed Dial) button.
- 3 Enter the speed dial number between 01 and 99 using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.
The corresponding entry's name briefly displays. To confirm the name again, press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Adjust the document resolution to suit your fax needs. For more information, see "Resolution" on page 273.

If you need to change the contrast, see "Lighter/Darker" on page 274.

5 Press the  (Start) button.

6 The document scans to the memory.

When you are using the document glass, the display prompts you for another page. Press the  button to select Yes to add more documents or to select No to begin sending the fax immediately, and then press the  (Set) button.

7 The fax number stored in the speed dial location is automatically dialed. The document is sent when the remote fax machine answers.

 **NOTE:** Using the asterisk (*) in the first digit, you can send a document to multiple locations. For example, if you enter 0*, you can send a document to the locations registered between 01 and 09.

Group Dialing

If you frequently send the same document to several destinations, you can create a group of these destinations and set them under a one-digit group dial location. This allows you to use a group dial number setting to send the same document to all the destinations in the group.

 **NOTE:** You cannot include one group dial number within another group dial number.

Setting Group Dial

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until System is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until Phone Book is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until Group Dial is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  button until the desired group dial number between 1 and 6 is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Ensure that Name is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 8 Enter the name, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 9 Ensure that Speed Dial No is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 10 Press the  button until the desired number is highlighted, press the  button to select the speed dial numbers, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 11 Ensure that Apply Settings is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 12 When Are You Sure? is displayed, ensure that Yes is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 13 To store more group dial numbers, repeat steps 6 to 12.
- 14 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

Editing Group Dial

You can delete a specific speed dial number from a selected group or add a new number to the selected group.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until System is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until Phone Book is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until Group Dial is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

- 6 Press the  button until the group dial number that you want to edit is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 To change the group dial name:
 - a Ensure that Name is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - b Enter a new name, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - c Press the  button until Apply settings is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - d When Are You Sure? is displayed, ensure that Yes is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 8 To change the speed dial number:
 - a Press the  button until Speed Dial No is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - b Press the  button until the speed dial number that you want to edit is highlighted, and then press the  button to select or deselect the speed dial number. Press the  (Set) button.
 - c Press the  button until Apply settings is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - d When Are You Sure? is displayed, ensure that Yes is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 9 To delete the group dial:
 - a Press the  (Backspace) button.
 - b Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, press the  button to select Yes, and then press the  (Set) button.

 **NOTE:** When you delete the last speed dial in a group, the group itself is not deleted.
- 10 If you want to edit another group dial number or enter a new group dial number, repeat steps 5 to 9.
- 11 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

Sending a Fax Using Group Dialing (Multi-address Transmission)

You can use group dialing for broadcasting or delayed transmissions.

Follow the procedure of the desired operation (For Delayed transmission, see "Specifying the Fax Settings" on page 269).

You can use one or more group numbers in one operation. Then continue the procedure to complete the desired operation.

Your printer automatically scans the document loaded in the Automatic Document Feeder or on the document glass into the memory. The printer dials each of the numbers included in the group.

Printing an Address Book List

You can check your automatic dial setting by printing a speed dial list.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
 - 2 Press the  button until System is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - 3 Press the  button until Report / List is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
 - 4 Press the  button until Address Book is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- A list of your speed dial entries is printed.

Other Ways to Fax

Using the Secure Receiving Mode

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. You can turn on the secure fax mode using the **Secure Receive** option to restrict printing out all of the received faxes when the printer is unattended. In the secure fax mode, all incoming faxes will get saved in the memory. When the mode turns off, any faxes stored will be printed.

 **NOTE:** Before operation, ensure that **Panel Lock Set** is set to **Enable**.

To turn the secure receiving mode on:

- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **System** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Admin Menu** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 4 Press the  button until **Secure Settings** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 5 Press the  button until **Secure Receive** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 6 Ensure that **Secure Receive Set** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 7 Press the  button until **Enable** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.

 **NOTE:** The factory-default password is 0000.

- 8 To return to the standby mode, press the  (**Menu**) button.

When a fax is received in the secure receiving mode, your printer stores it into memory and the **Job Status** screen displays **Secure Receive** to let you know that there is a fax stored.

 **NOTE:** If you change the password while **Secure Receive Set** is **Enable**, perform steps 1 to 5. Press the  button until **Change Password** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button. Enter the new password, and then press the  (**Set**) button.

To print received documents:

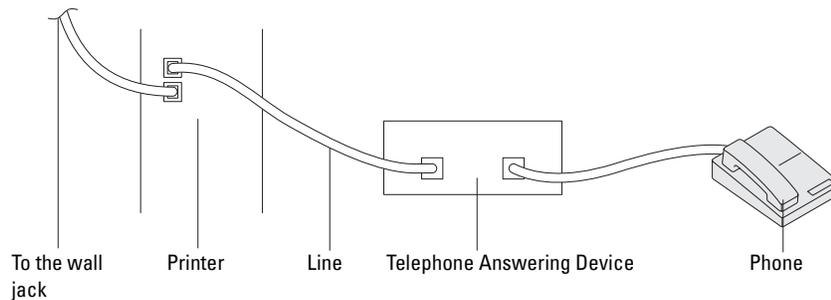
- 1 Press the  (**Menu**) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **Job Status** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Secure Receive** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 4 Enter the password, and then press the  (**Set**) button.

The faxes stored in memory are printed.

To turn the secure receiving mode off:

- 1 Access the **Secure Receive Set** menu by following steps 1 to 6 in "To turn the secure receiving mode on:".
- 2 Press the  button until **Disable** is highlighted, and then press the  (**Set**) button.
- 3 To return to the previous screen, press the  (**Back**) button.

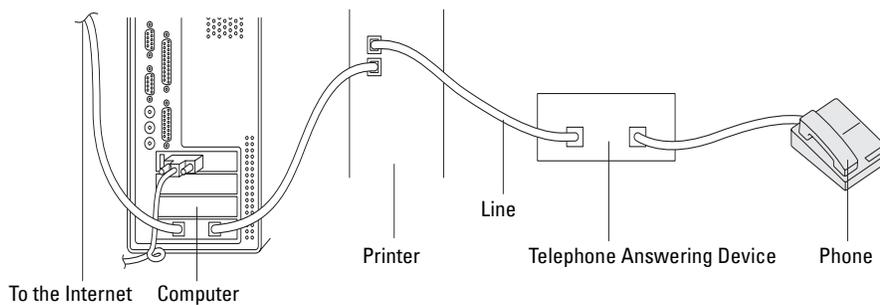
Using an Answering Machine



You can connect a telephone answering device (TAD) directly to the back of your printer as shown above.

- Set your printer to the Ans Machine/Fax mode and set Auto Rec Ans/FAX to specify the time for the TAD.
- When the TAD picks up the call, the printer monitors and takes the line if fax tones are received and then starts receiving the fax.
- If the answering device is off, the printer automatically goes into the Fax after the ring tone sounds for a predefined time.

Using a Computer Modem



If you want to use your computer modem for faxing or for a dial-up Internet connection, connect the computer modem directly to the back of your printer with the TAD as shown above.

- Set your printer to the Ans Machine/Fax mode and set Auto Rec Ans/FAX to specify the time for the TAD.
- Turn off the computer modem's fax-receive feature.
- Do not use the computer modem if your printer is sending or receiving a fax.
- Follow the instructions provided with your computer modem and fax application to fax via the computer modem.

Printing a Report

The following reports may be useful when using fax:

Address Book

This list shows all the addresses currently stored in the memory of the printer as **Address Book** information.

Fax Activity

This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Protocol Monitor

This report shows information about the faxes you recently received or sent.

Procedures:

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **System** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until **Report / List** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until the report or list you want to print is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
The selected report or list is printed.

Changing Fax Defaults

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until **System** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Ensure that **Defaults Settings** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until **Fax Defaults** is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until the desired menu item is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Press the  or  button until the desired setting is highlighted or enter the value using the numeric keypad, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 7 Repeat steps 5 and 6, as needed.
- 8 To return to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

Know Your Printer

22 Understanding Your Printer Software (Windows [®] Only) ...	291
23 Understanding Printer Messages	295
24 Specifications	301

Understanding Your Printer Software (Windows® Only)

Use the *Software and Documentation* disc that shipped with your printer to install a combination of software programs, depending on your operating system.

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Printer Status Window

The **Printer Status** window alerts you when there is a warning or when an error occurs, for example, when a paper jam occurs or toner is running low.

By default, the **Printer Status** window launches only when an error occurs. When an error occurs, the error message appears on the **Printer Status** window. You can set the **Printer Status** window to always launch when printing in **Printing Status Window Properties**.

You can also check the toner level of your printer.

Status Monitor Console

Use the **Status Monitor Console** to manage multiple instances of the **Status Window** for a particular printer. Select a printer from the list view (or **Printer Selection**) by clicking its name to open a **Status Window** for a particular printer.

Dell Supplies Management System

You can launch the **Dell Supplies Management System** dialog box from the **All Programs** menu or the desktop icon. You can order consumables by phone or from the web.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer** → **Dell Supplies Management System**.

The **Dell Supplies Management System** window appears.

- 2 Select your printer from the **Select Printer Model** list.
- 3 If you are ordering from the web:
 - a Select a web address from the **Select Reorder URL** list.
 - b Click **Visit Dell printer supplies ordering web site**.
Dell C1765nf/C1765nfw Color MFP - Dell Supplies Management System window appears.
 - c Enter the **Service Tag**, and then click **OK**.

If you order by phone, call the number that appears in the **Order by Phone** section.

Quick Launch Utility

Using the **Quick Launch Utility** window, you can open the **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter**.

To use the **Quick Launch Utility**, select to install the **Quick Launch Utility** when you install the Dell software.

To open the **Quick Launch Utility** window:

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer** → **Quick Launch Utility**.
The **Quick Launch Utility** dialog box opens.



- 2 The **Quick Launch Utility** window provides six buttons; **Status Window**, **Tool Box**, **Troubleshooting**, **Address Book Editor**, **ScanButton Manager**, and **Dell ScanCenter**.

To exit, click **X** at the top-right of the window.

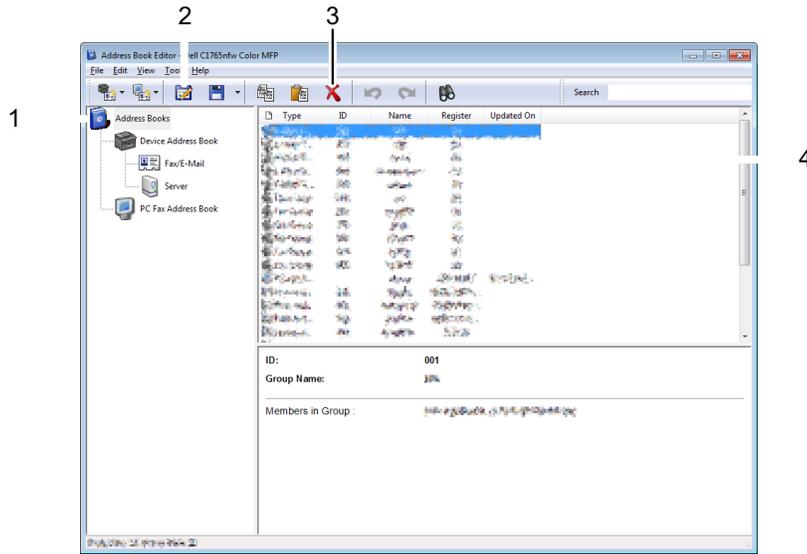
For details, click **Help** of each application.

Status Window	Click to open the Printer Status window. See "Printer Status Window" on page 291.
Tool Box	Click to open the Tool Box . See "Understanding the Tool Box Menus" on page 139.
Troubleshooting ^{*1}	Click to open the Troubleshooting Guide , which allows you to resolve issues by yourself.
Address Book Editor	Click to open the Address Book Editor , which allows you to create and edit Address Book entries.
ScanButton Manager	Click to open the ScanButton Manager , which allows you to specify how the ScanButton Manager behaves for scan events that the device generates.
Dell ScanCenter ^{*2}	Click to open the Dell ScanCenter .

*1 **Troubleshooting Guide** is the Portable Document Format (PDF) file. This item needs software to view the document.

*2 **Dell ScanCenter** may not be displayed depending on the operating systems.

Address Book Editor



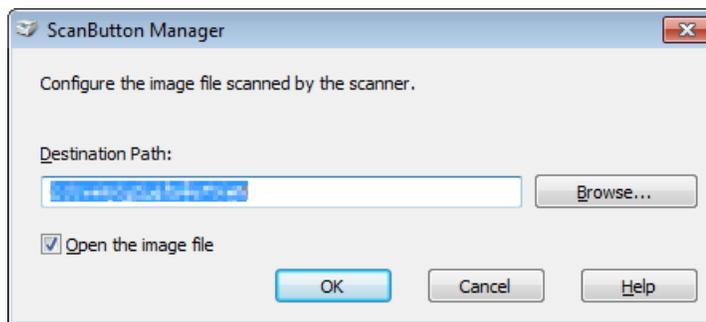
- 1 Read the **Device Address Book** entries from the printer to the **Address Book Editor** and read the **PC Fax Address Book** entries from the PC to the **Address Book Editor**.
- 2 Allows you to edit a selected **Address Book** entry in the edit dialog box.
- 3 Deletes a selected **Address Book** entry.
- 4 Displays **Address Book** entries.

 **NOTE:** You must install the fax driver before reading or editing the **Address Book** entries.

For more information about **Address Book Editor**, see the **Help** of **Address Book Editor**.

ScanButton Manager

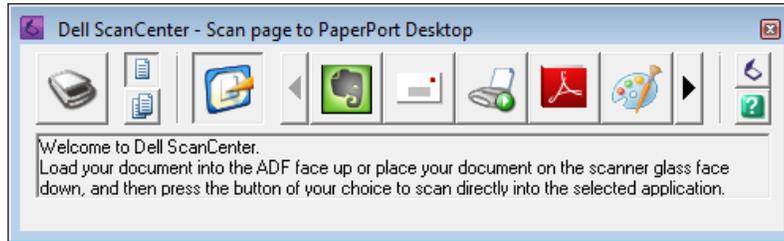
The **Scan to Application** stores the image files in the **My Documents** folder by default, and then you can open them using the related application. Use **ScanButton Manager** to change the output destination of the obtained image files and to select whether to open the image files using the related application.



Dell ScanCenter

Dell ScanCenter is a PaperPort® application that allows you to scan items and send them directly to PaperPort or other programs on your computer without running the PaperPort program first. For more information about using Dell ScanCenter, refer to PaperPort's Help menu.

- ✎ **NOTE:** PaperPort may not be supported depending on the operating systems.
- ✎ **NOTE:** PaperPort application is available only on the *Software and Documentation* disc provided with the printer. The licensed software application is not available for download from support.dell.com.



Understanding Printer Messages

The printer operator panel displays messages describing the current state of the printer and indicates possible printer problems you must resolve. This chapter describes messages, their meanings, and how to clear the messages.

 **CAUTION:** When an error code is displayed, the print data remaining on the printer and the information accumulated in the memory of the printer are not secured.

Error-Code	What you can do
001-360	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell™. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
003-340	
003-356	
005-121	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF" on page 325.
005-301	Close the ADF cover.
006-370	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
007-340	
007-371	
009-360	Re-install the specified toner cartridge. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 312.
009-361	
009-362	
009-363	
009-654	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
010-354	
010-377	
016-315	
016-317	
016-338	
016-344	
016-347	
016-354	
016-355	
016-370	
016-372	
016-374	
016-375	
016-376	
016-377	
016-393	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
016-395	
016-503	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if SMTP server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-504	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if user name and password for POP3 server and DNS server are set correctly.
016-507	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if user name and password used for SMTP server are set correctly.

Error-Code	What you can do
016-700	Press the ✓ (Set) button to cancel the current print job.
016-701	
016-720	
016-744	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Contact Dell if this message appears repeatedly. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
016-745	
016-749	Press the ✓ (Set) button to cancel the current print job.
016-764	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Contact SMTP server administrator.
016-766	
016-767	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check e-mail address, and try scanning again.
016-794	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
016-795	
016-797	
016-920	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Execute the operation again according to the operation procedure.
016-921	
016-981	Press the ✓ (Set) button to cancel the current print job. If you are copying using Collated, change the setting to Uncollated and try copying again. See "Setting Copy Options" on page 235.
016-985	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Retry scanning by lowering the resolution setting or changing the file format of the scanned image.
017-970	
017-980	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
017-981	
017-988	
024-914	Load the specified paper. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 211 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 219.
024-969	Load the appropriate paper. See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 211 or "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 219.
026-720	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
026-721	
026-722	
026-723	
026-750	
026-751	
026-752	
027-446	Change IP address to avoid duplication. Turn off the printer, and turn it on again.
027-452	
031-521	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Confirm login-able computer with your system administrator.
031-526	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check DNS connection, or check if forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-529	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if password is correct.
031-530	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if storage location is correct. Storage location you specified is DFS setting, and check if it is linked to other server. Specify directly linked server, share name, and storage location.

Error-Code	What you can do
031-533	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check the following:
031-534	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the file name you specified is not used by other users. • If file or folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-535	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if other user is not operating file in storage location you specified.
031-536	
031-537	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if storage location has free space.
031-555	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
031-556	
031-557	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Change the file name that already exists on FTP server.
031-558	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
031-571	
031-574	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check DNS connection, or check if name of forwarding destination server is registered with DNS.
031-575	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Set DNS address, or set forwarding destination server address as IP address.
031-576	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if the printer communicates with forwarding destination FTP server. For example, check connection of network cable and if the IP address of the server is correct.
031-578	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if login name (user name) and password are correct.
031-579	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if storage location is correct.
031-582	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if the file name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if storage location has free space.
031-584	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if the folder name you specified can be created in storage location. Check if the folder that has the same name as the one you specified already exists.
031-585	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check server access rights.
031-587	
031-588	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if storage location has free space.
031-589	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
031-594	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Execute the operation again according to the operation procedure. Contact Dell if this message appears repeatedly. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
031-598	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check append access right to the file and if server supports FTP append command.
033-503	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
033-513	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Print the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed.
033-517	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if password is correct.
033-518	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Check if your country code is set correctly.
033-519	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
033-787	
033-788	Press the ✓ (Set) button. Remove the received fax, or wait for a while until sending a fax is completed. Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message.
034-700	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message. Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 43.
034-701	
034-702	

Error-Code	What you can do
034-703	Press the ✓ (Set) button to clear the message. Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 43.
034-704	
034-705	
034-706	
034-707	
034-708	
034-709	
034-710	
034-711	
034-712	
034-713	
034-714	
034-715	
034-716	
034-717	
034-718	
034-719	
034-720	
034-721	
034-722	
034-723	
034-724	
034-725	
034-726	
034-727	
034-750	
034-751	
034-752	
034-753	
034-754	
034-755	
034-756	
034-757	
034-758	
034-759	
034-760	
034-761	
034-762	
034-763	
034-764	
034-765	

Error-Code	What you can do
034-766	
034-767	
034-768	
062-321	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
062-790	Press the ✓ (Set) button.
075-100	Check and clear the paper path, load the specified paper, and then press the ✓ (Set) button. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer" on page 329.
075-921	Load paper for the second side (odd) pages, and press the ✓ (Set) button. See Figure "Loading Print Media When Manual Duplex Printing" on page 224.
077-100	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Jams" on page 323.
077-101	
077-102	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer" on page 330.
077-104	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Jams" on page 323.
077-105	
077-300	Close the rear cover.
077-900	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the Output Tray" on page 332.
077-901	Check and clear the paper path. See "Clearing Jams" on page 323.
091-402	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
092-310	Clean the CTD sensor. See "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 316.
093-423	Replace the specified toner cartridge soon. Order a new consumable from www.dell.com/supplies .
093-424	See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 310.
093-425	
093-426	
093-919	Re-install or replace the specified toner cartridge. See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 310.
093-920	
093-921	
093-922	
093-930	Remove the specified toner cartridge and install a new one. If you do not replace the toner cartridge, print quality problems may occur. Order a new consumable from www.dell.com/supplies .
093-931	
093-932	See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 310.
093-933	
093-960	Replace the specified toner cartridge with the supported one. Order a new consumable from www.dell.com/supplies .
093-961	
093-962	See "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 310.
093-963	
093-970	Re-install the specified toner cartridge. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 312.
093-971	
093-972	
093-973	

Error-Code	What you can do
117-331	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
117-332	
117-333	
117-334	
117-340	
117-342	
117-343	
117-344	
117-346	
117-348	
117-349	
117-350	
117-351	
117-366	
124-333	Turn off the printer, and then on. If this does not solve the problem, contact Dell. See "Contacting Dell" on page 360.
134-211	
191-310	
193-700	This message indicates the printer is in the non-Dell toner mode.

Specifications

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Operating System Compatibility

Your Dell™ C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer is compatible with Microsoft® Windows® XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista®, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server® 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Mac OS X Version 10.4.11, 10.5, 10.6, and 10.7.

Power Supply

Rated Voltage	220-240 VAC	110-127 VAC
Frequency	50/60 Hz	50/60 Hz
Current	5.0 A	11.0 A

Dimensions

Height: 338 mm (13.31 inches) Width: 410 mm (16.14 inches) Depth: 379 mm (14.92 inches)

Weight (only the toner cartridges are included):

- Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer: 14.8 kg (32.63 lb)
- Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer: 14.9 kg (32.85 lb)

Memory

Base memory	128 MB
-------------	--------

Page Description Language (PDL)/Emulation, Operating System, and Interface

PDL/Emulations	Host-based printing system	
OSes	Windows XP, Windows XP 64-bit Edition, Windows Vista, Windows Vista 64-bit Edition, Windows 7, Windows 7 64-bit Edition, Windows 8, Windows 8 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 64-bit Edition, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Mac OS X Version 10.4.11, 10.5, 10.6, and 10.7.	
Interfaces	Standard local:	USB 2.0
	Standard network:	10Base-T/100Base-TX Ethernet IEEE 802.11b/802.11g (Wireless) (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

MIB Compatibility

A Management Information Base (MIB) is a database containing information about network devices (such as adapters, bridges, routers, or computers). This information helps network administrators manage the network (analyze performance, traffic, errors, and so on). Dell C1765nf/C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer complies with standard industry MIB specifications, allowing the printer to be recognized and managed by various printer and network management software systems.

Environment

Operation

Temperature	10-32°C
Relative humidity	10-85% RH (no condensation)

Print Quality Guarantee

Temperature	15-28°C
Relative humidity	20-70% RH (no condensation)

Storage

Temperature range	-20-40°C
Storage humidity range	5-80% RH (no condensation)

Altitude

Operating	Up to 3,100 m (10,000 feet)
Storage	70.9275 Kpa

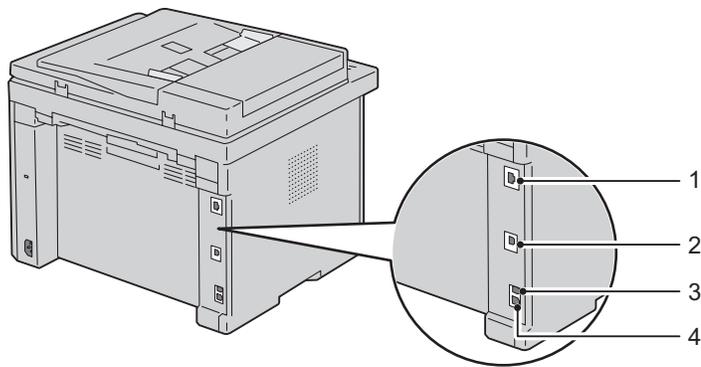


NOTE: For more information on adjusting the altitude, see "Adjust Altitude" on page 151.

Cables

Your interconnection cable must meet the following requirements:

	Connection type	Connection specifications and symbols	
1	Ethernet	10 Base-T/100 Base-TX	
2	USB	USB 2.0	
3	Wall Jack Connector		LINE 
4	Phone Connector		PHONE 



Copy Specifications

Item	Description
Copy Resolution	Optical: 600x600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch), ADF: 600x300 dots/25.4mm (1 inch) (Same for Color/Black&White)
Copy Speed	Color 12 cpm or more, Black&White 15 cpm or more (When using the document glass to make sequential copies of a document with pages scanned one by one.) Color 2.87 cpm or more, Black&White 10.64 cpm or more (When using the ADF to make sequential copies of multiple documents.)
Paper Size	A4, A5, B5, Executive, Letter, Folio, Legal, Monarch, DL, C5, Envelope #10
Zoom Rate	Document glass: 25% - 400%, ADF: 25% - 400%
Multiple copies	1 - 99 pages
Copy mode (=Original Type)	Text, Text & Photo, Photo
Scanning method	Platen: Document-fixed flatbed scanning method ADF: Carriage-fixed, document-feeding scanning method (one side scanning)

Scanner Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	Tool Without An Interesting Name (TWAIN), Windows Image Acquisition (WIA)
Scan Resolution	TWAIN: 75 x 75 to 4800 x 4800 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch) WIA: 75/100/150/200/300/400/600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch) Resolutions other than the following are achieved by driver's resolution conversion: 200 x 200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch) 300 x 300 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch) (Default) 600 x 600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch) 1200 x 1200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)
Color bit depth	24 bit (WIA, TWAIN)
Mono bit depth	1 bit for Line art and 8 bit for Gray scale
Effective scanning length	Document glass: 297 mm (11.69 inches), ADF: 355.6 mm (14 inches)
Effective scanning width	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
Scan speed (Text mode)	Black&White: 641.22 μ sec/line (600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)), 1265.19 μ sec/line (1200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)) Color: 2176.52 μ sec/line (600 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch)), 4363.36 μ sec/line (1200 dots/25.4 mm (1 inch))

Facsimile Specifications

Item	Description
Compatibility	ITU-T Group 3
Applicable line	Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)
Data coding	Black&White: 1bit, JBIG, MMR, MR, MH encoding Color: Not supported
Max modem speed	33.6 Kbps
Transmission speed	Approx. 3 seconds/page *Transmission time applies to memory transmission of text data scanned in Standard resolution with ECM using only ITU-T No.1 Chart.
Scanning speed	Document glass: approx. 3 seconds/A4 (at standard fax resolution mode) ADF: approx. 5 seconds/Letter (at standard fax resolution mode), 7.5 seconds/Letter (at fine fax resolution mode)
Maximum document length	Document glass: 297 mm (11.69 inches), ADF: 355.6 mm (14 inches)
Paper size	Letter, A4, Legal
Resolution	Standard: 8 pels/mm (203 pels/inch) x 3.85 lines/mm (98 lines/inch) 200 dpi x 100 dpi Fine: 8 pels/mm (203 pels/inch) x 7.7 lines/mm (196 lines/inch) 200 dpi x 200 dpi Super Fine: 8 pels/mm (203 pels/inch) x 15.4 lines/mm (391 lines/inch) 200 dpi x 400 dpi Ultra Fine: 16 pels/mm (406 pels/inch) x 15.4 lines/mm (391 lines/inch) 400 dpi x 400 dpi
User Memory	2 MB
Halftone	256 levels

Maintaining Your Printer

25 Maintaining Your Printer	309
26 Clearing Jams	323

Maintaining Your Printer

Periodically, your printer requires you to complete certain tasks to maintain optimum print quality. If several people are using the printer, you may want to designate a key operator to maintain your printer. Refer printing problems and maintenance tasks to this key operator.

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

Determining the Status of Supplies

If your printer is connected to the network, the **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool** can provide instant feedback on remaining toner levels. Type the printer's IP address in your web browser to view this information. To use the **E-Mail Alert** feature that notifies you when the printer requires new supplies, type your name or the name of the key operator in the e-mail list box.

On the operator panel, you can also confirm the following:

- Any supply or maintenance items that require attention replacing (However, the printer can only display information about one item at a time.)
- Amount of toner remaining in each toner cartridge

Conserving Supplies

You can change several settings in your printer driver to conserve toner cartridge and paper.

Supply	Setting	Function
Toner cartridge	Toner Saving Mode in the Graphics tab of the printer driver	This check box allows the users to select a print mode that uses less toner. When this feature is used, the image quality will be lower than when it is not used.
Print media	Multiple Up in the Layout tab of the printer driver	The printer prints two or more pages on one side of a sheet. The available numbers that each printer driver can print one sheet of paper are as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Printer driver for Microsoft® Windows®: 2, 4, 8, or 16 pages • Printer driver for Macintosh: 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages Combined with the duplex setting, Multiple Up allows you to print up to 32 pages on one sheet of paper. (16 images on the front and 16 on the back)

Storing Print Media

To avoid potential paper feeding problems and uneven print quality, there are several things you can do.

- To achieve the best possible print quality, store print media in an environment where the temperature is approximately 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%.
- Store cartons of print media on a pallet or shelf, rather than directly on the floor.
- If you store individual packages of print media out of the original carton, ensure that they rest on a flat surface so the edges do not buckle or curl.
- Do not place anything on top of the print media packages.

Storing Consumables

Store consumables in their original packaging until you need to use them. Do not store consumables in:

- Temperatures greater than 40°C (104°F).
- An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
- Direct sunlight.
- Dusty places.
- A car for a long period of time.
- An environment where corrosive gases are present.
- An environment with salty air.

Replacing Toner Cartridges

⚠ WARNING: Before replacing toner cartridges, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.

Dell toner cartridges are available only through Dell. You can order more cartridges online at <http://www.dell.com/supplies> or by phone. To order by phone, see "Contacting Dell" on page 360.

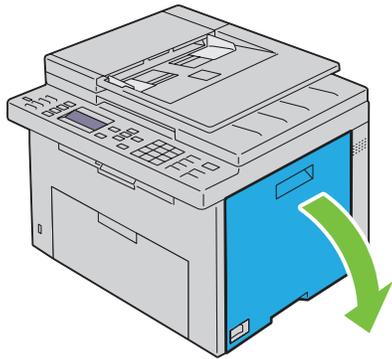
It is recommended that you use Dell toner cartridges for your printer. Dell does not provide warranty coverage for problems caused by using accessories, parts, or components not supplied by Dell.

⚠ WARNING: Never throw used toner cartridges into fire. The residual toner could explode resulting in burns and injuries.

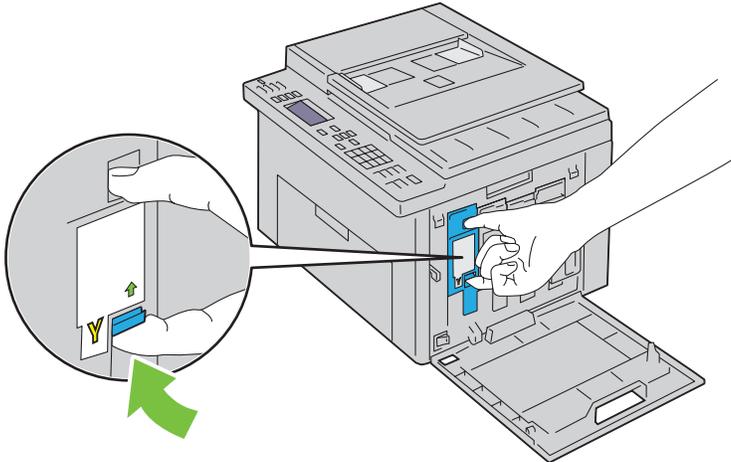
⚠ WARNING: Do not shake the used toner cartridge to avoid spilling of toner.

Removing the Toner Cartridges

- 1 Open the toner access cover.

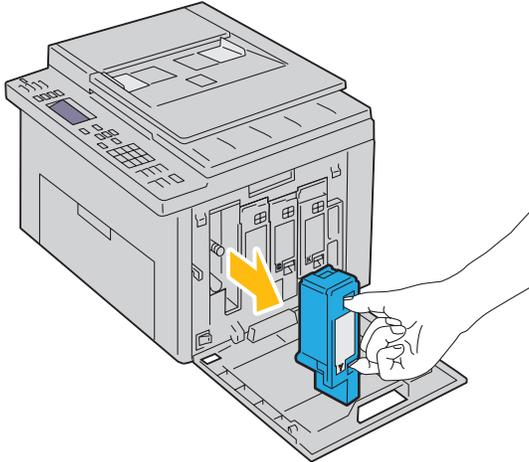


2 Pinch the cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.



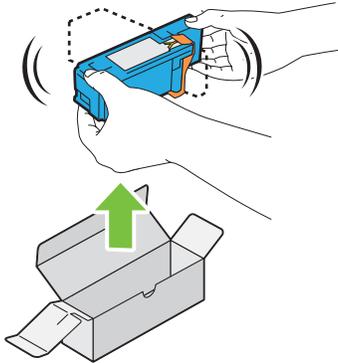
⚠ WARNING: Always pull the cartridge out slowly so you do not spill any toner.

3 Pull the toner cartridge out.



Installing a Toner Cartridge

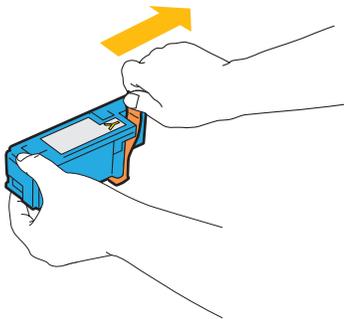
- 1 Unpack a new toner cartridge of the desired color and shake it five to six times to distribute the toner evenly.



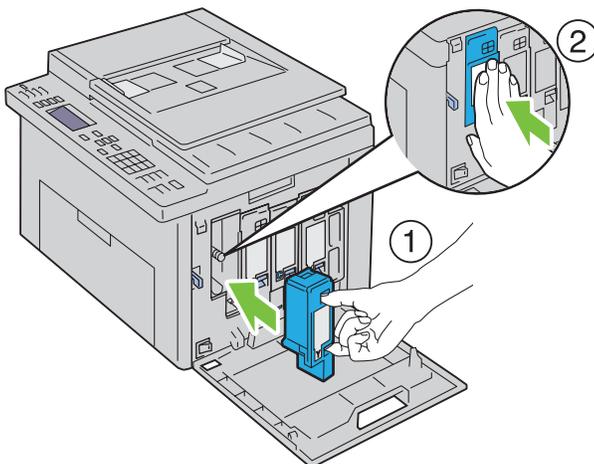
 **NOTE:** Ensure that the color of the new toner cartridge matches that on the handle before replacing it.

 **NOTE:** Handle the toner cartridge carefully to avoid spillage of the toner.

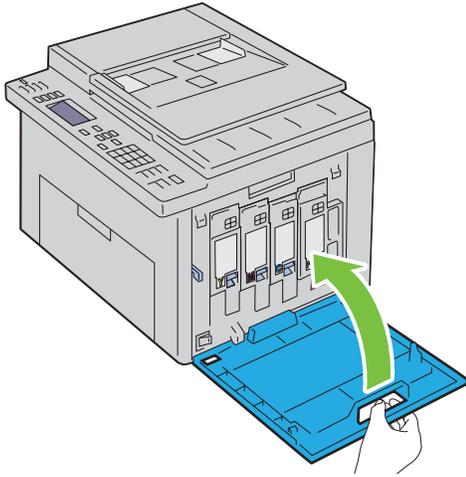
- 2 Remove the tape from the toner cartridge.



- 3 Adjust the toner cartridge to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the cartridge clicks.



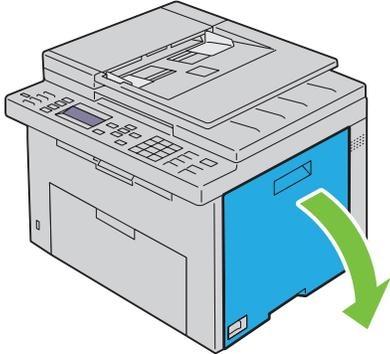
- 4 Close the toner access cover.



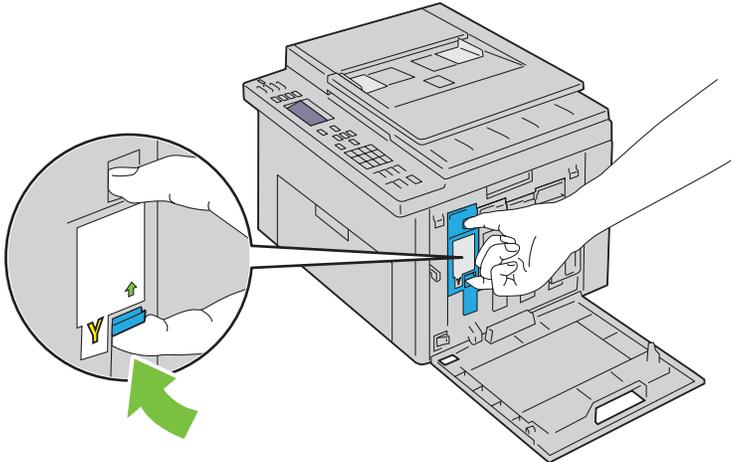
Cleaning Inside the Printer

⚠ WARNING: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.

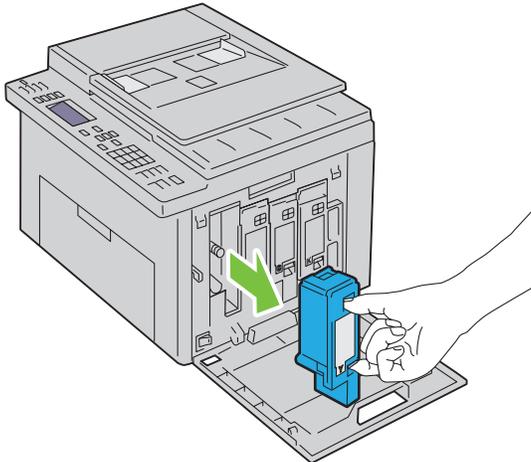
- 1 Confirm that the printer is not in operation, and open the toner access cover.



2 Pinch the cartridge firmly as shown in the illustration.

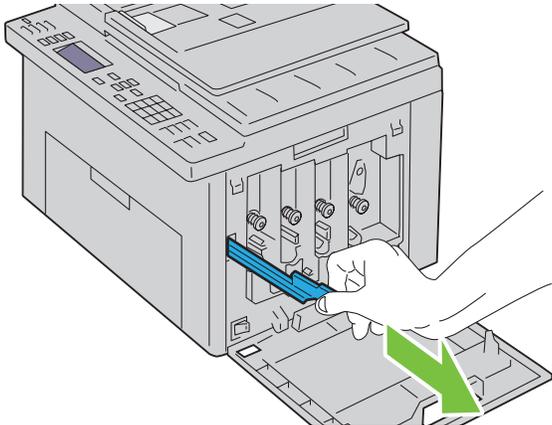


3 Pull the toner cartridge out.

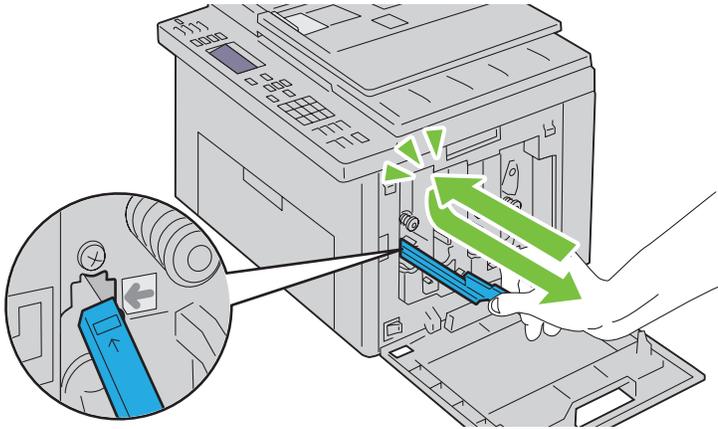


4 Pull the other three cartridges out as well.

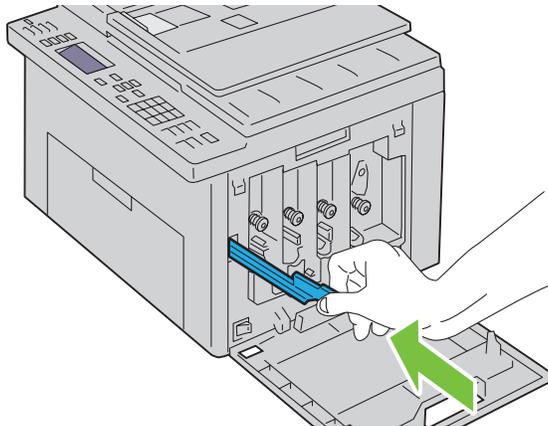
5 Pull the cleaning rod out.



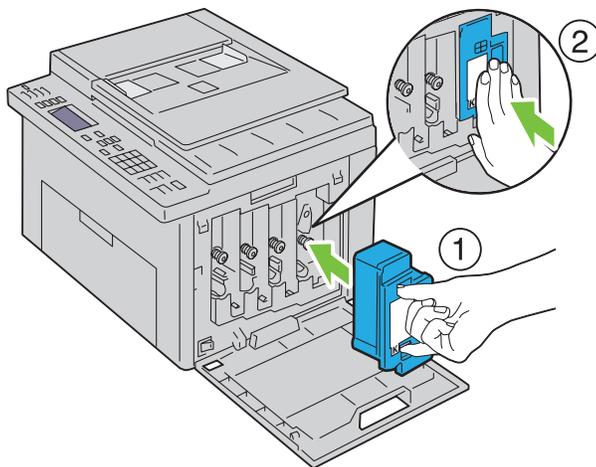
- 6 Insert the cleaning rod fully into the hole beside the arrow on the printer until its tip reaches the interior of the printer as illustrated below, and then pull it out.



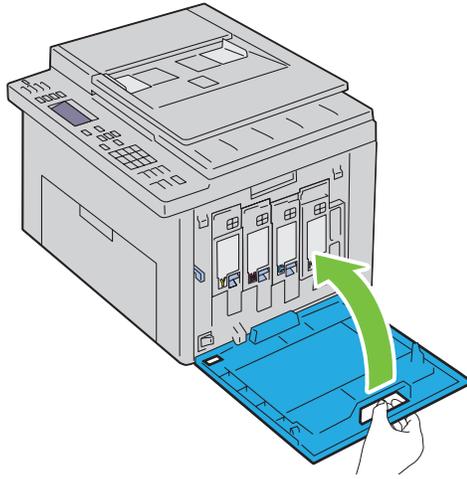
- 7 Repeat the same procedure for the other three holes.
8 Insert the cleaning rod back to its original location.



- 9 Replace the black cartridge by adjusting it to the associated cartridge holder, and then insert it firmly by pressing near the center of the label until the cartridge clicks.



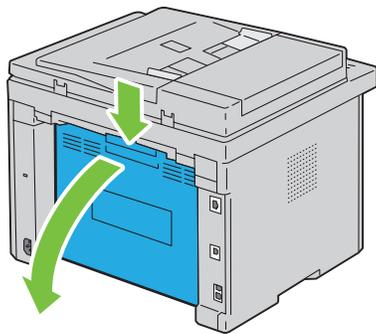
- 10 Replace the other three cartridges as well.
- 11 Close the toner access cover.



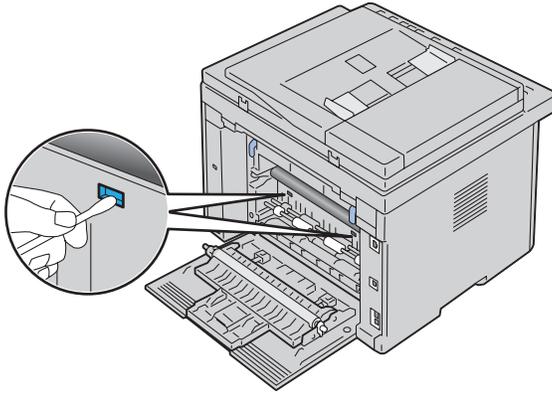
Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor

Clean the CTD sensor only when an alert for the CTD sensor is shown on the Status Monitor or operator panel.

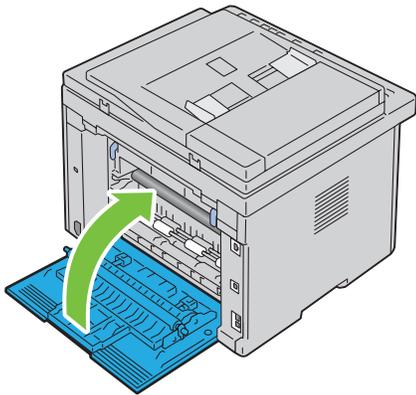
- 1 Ensure that the printer is turned off.
- 2 Push the rear cover release handle and open the rear cover.



- 3 Clean the CTD sensor inside the printer with a clean dry cotton swab.



- 4 Close the rear cover.



- 5 Turn on the printer.

Adjusting Color Registration

This section describes how to adjust the color registration when you first install the printer or after moving it to a new location.

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter the Admin Menu menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

Performing Auto Adjust

Auto Adjust allows you to correct the color registration automatically.

The Operator Panel

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button.
- 2 Press the  button until System is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 3 Press the  button until Admin Menu is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 4 Press the  button until Maintenance is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 5 Press the  button until Adjust ColorRegi is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.
- 6 Ensure that Auto Adjust is highlighted, and then press the  (Set) button.

- 7 Ensure that Are You Sure? is displayed, press the  button to select Yes, and then press the  (Set) button.

Auto adjust is performed.

The Tool Box

- 1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer → Tool Box.



NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The registration adjustment page is displayed.

- 4 Clear the **On** check box for **Auto Registration Adjustment**.

- 5 Click **Start** next to **Auto Correct**.

The color registration is corrected automatically.

Printing the Color Registration Chart

The Tool Box

- 1 Click Start → All Programs → Dell Printers → Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer → Tool Box.



NOTE: The **Select Printer** window appears in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
- 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.

The registration adjustment page is displayed.

- 4 Clear the **On** check box for **Auto Registration Adjustment**.

- 5 Click **Start** next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed.

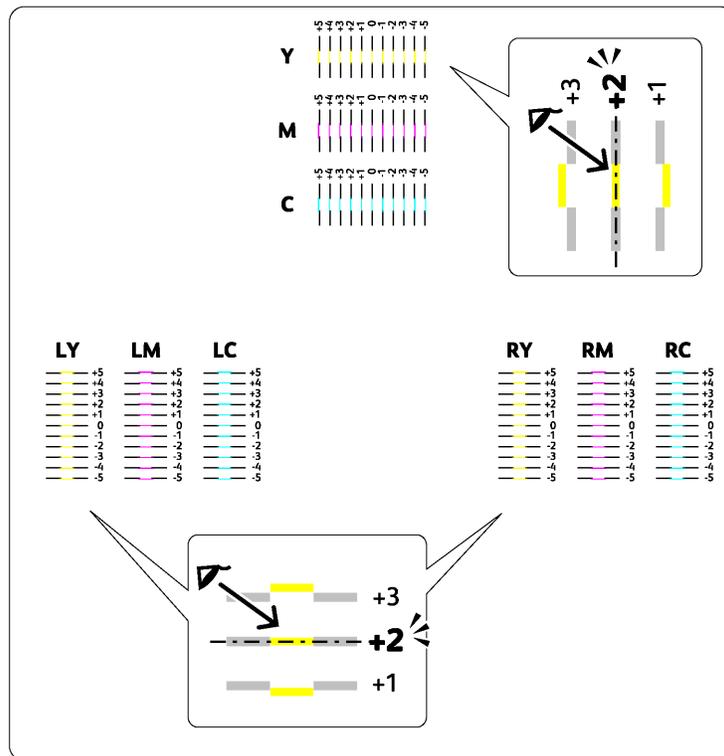
Determining Values

On the color registration chart printed, find the straightest lines where the two black lines and the colored line are most closely aligned for each color (Y, M, and C).

If you find the straightest line, make a note of the value (-5 - +5) indicated by the straightest line for each color.

When the value is 0 for each color, you do not need to adjust the color registration.

When the value is not 0, enter the value according to the procedure in "Entering Values" on page 319.



Entering Values

The Tool Box

Using the **Tool Box**, enter the values that you found in the color registration chart to make adjustments.

- 1 Click **Start** → **All Programs** → **Dell Printers** → **Dell C1765 Color Multifunction Printer** → **Tool Box**.

 **NOTE:** The **Select Printer** window appears in this step, when multiple printer drivers are installed on your computer. In this case, click **Dell C1765nf Color Multifunction Printer** or **Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer** listed in **Printer Name**, and then click **OK**.

The **Tool Box** opens.

- 2 Click the **Printer Maintenance** tab.
 - 3 Select **Registration Adjustment** from the list at the left side of the page.
- The registration adjustment page is displayed.
- 4 Clear the **On** check box for **Auto Registration Adjustment**.
 - 5 Select the value with the straight line, and then click **Apply New Settings**.
 - 6 Click **Start** next to **Print Color Regi Chart**.

The color registration chart is printed with the new values.

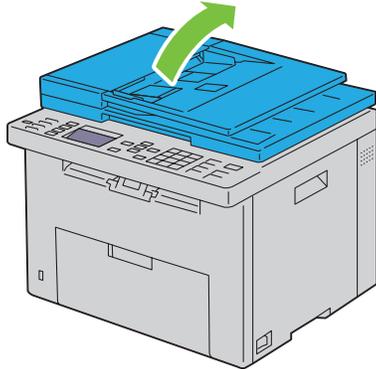
- 7 Adjust the values for every color until the lines at 0 are the straightest. If a line is not the straightest at 0, determine the value and adjust the printer again.

 **CAUTION:** After printing the color registration chart, do not turn off the printer until the printer motor has stopped running.

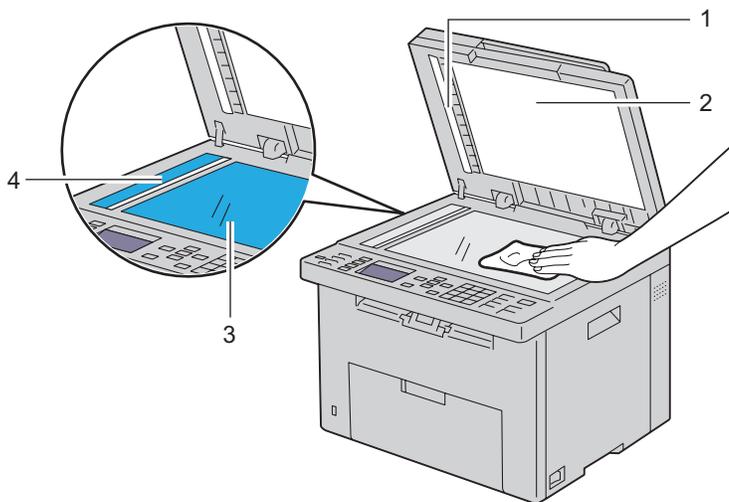
Cleaning the Scanner

Keeping the scanner clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the scanner at the start of each day and during the day, as needed.

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Open the document cover.

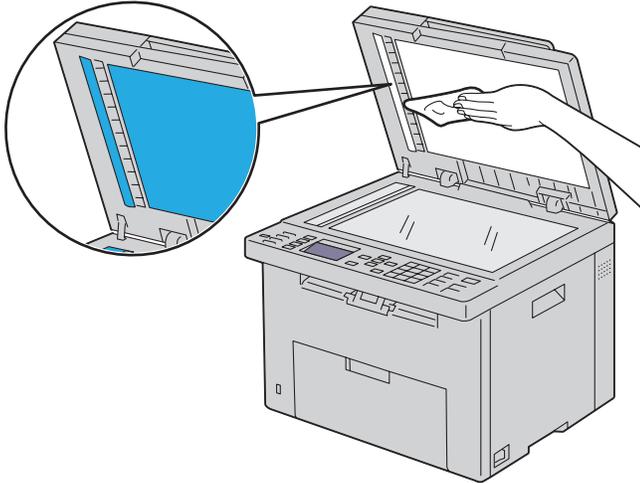


- 3 Wipe the surface of the document glass and ADF glass until it is clean and dry.

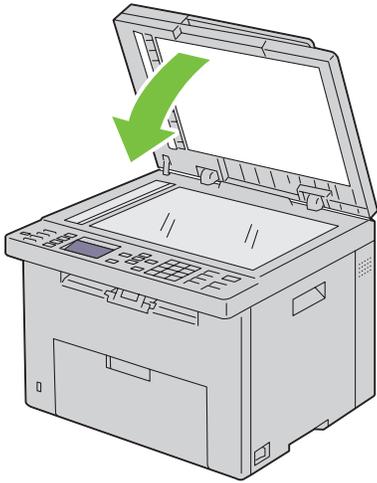


-
- | | |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 | White Strip |
| 2 | White Document Cover |
| 3 | Document Glass |
| 4 | ADF Glass |
-

4 Wipe the underside of the white document cover and white sheet until they are clean and dry.



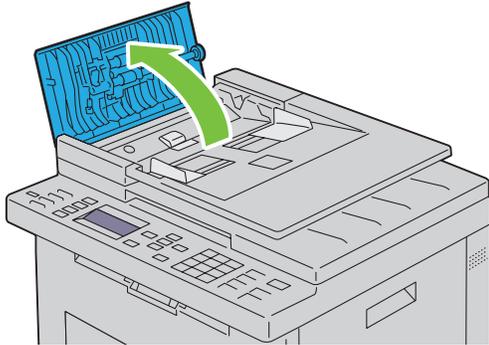
5 Close the document cover.



Cleaning the ADF Feed Roller

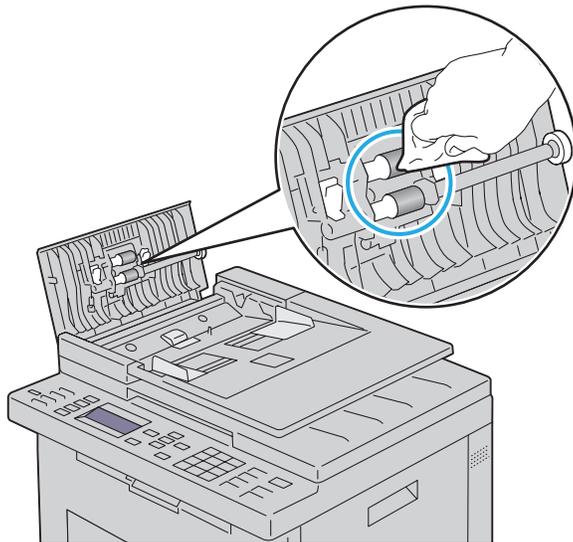
Keeping the ADF feed roller clean helps ensure the best possible copies. It is recommended to clean the ADF feed roller at regular intervals.

- 1 Open the ADF cover.



- 2 Wipe the ADF feed roller with a dry soft lint-free cloth or paper towel until it is clean.

If the ADF feed roller gets soiled with ink stains, paper from the ADF may also be soiled. In this case, slightly dampen a soft lint-free cloth or paper towel with a neutral detergent or water, and then remove the contamination from the ADF feed roller until it is clean and dry.



Clearing Jams

Careful selection of appropriate print media and proper loading allow you to avoid most jams. See "Print Media Guidelines" on page 203 for more information.

 **NOTE:** The images used in this manual are those of the Dell™ C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer unless otherwise mentioned.

 **NOTE:** Before buying large quantities of any print media, it is recommended that you try a sample first.

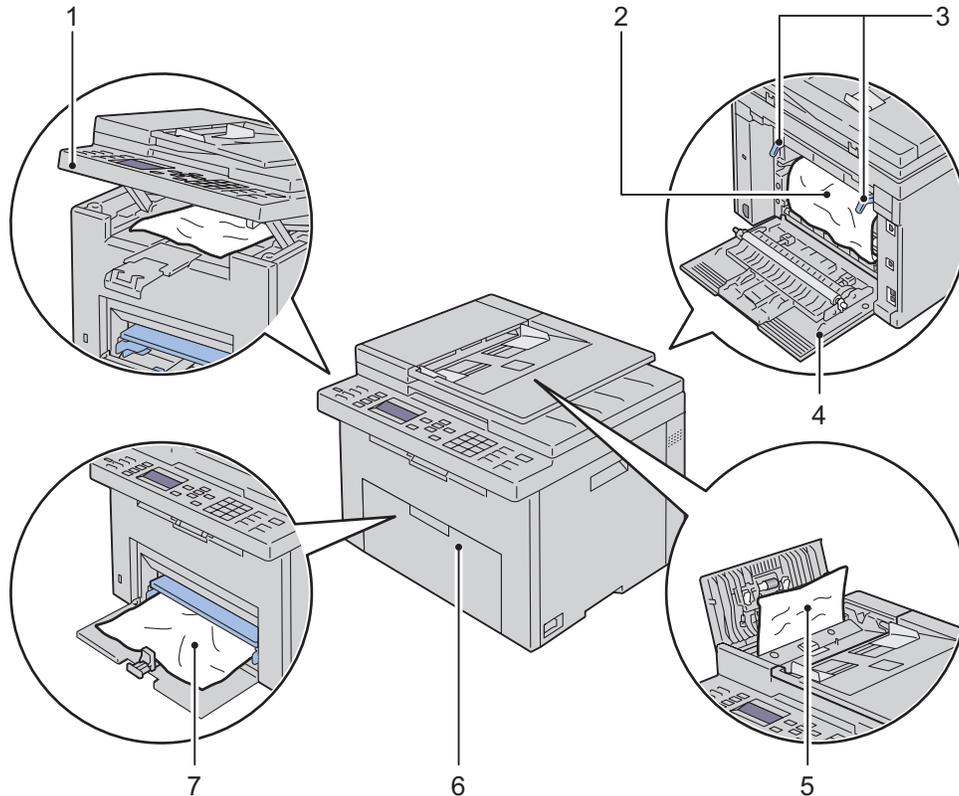
Avoiding Jams

- Use only recommended print media. See "Print Media Guidelines" on page 203 for more information.
- See "Loading Print Media in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 211 and "Loading Print Media in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 219 to load print media properly.
- Do not overload the print media sources. Ensure that the stack print media height does not exceed the maximum height indicated by the line with an arrow on each width guide.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, or curled print media.
- Flex, fan, and straighten print media before you load it. If a jam occurs with print media, try feeding one sheet at a time through the MPF or the PSI.
- Do not use print media that you have cut or trimmed yourself.
- Do not mix print media sizes, weights, or types in the same print media source.
- Ensure that the recommended print side is face up when you insert the print media.
- Keep print media stored in an acceptable environment. For more information, see "Storing Print Media" on page 207.
- Do not remove the PSI during a print job.
- Ensure that all cables that connect to the printer are correctly attached.
- Overtightening the guides may cause jams.

Identifying the Location of Paper Jams

⚠ WARNING: Do not attempt to clear any jams using tools or instruments. This may permanently damage the printer.

The following illustration shows where paper jams may occur along the print media path.



1	Scanner Unit
2	Fusing Unit
3	Lever
4	Rear Cover
5	ADF Cover
6	Front Cover
7	Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)

Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF

When a document jams while it passes through the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), remove jams in the following procedure.

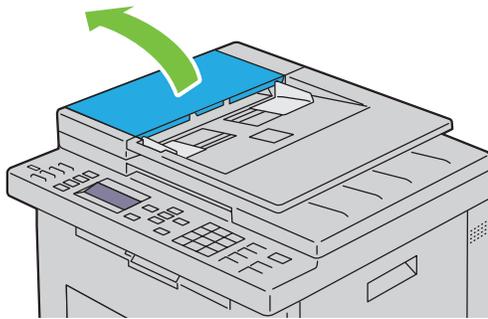
⚠ WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.

⚠ WARNING: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.

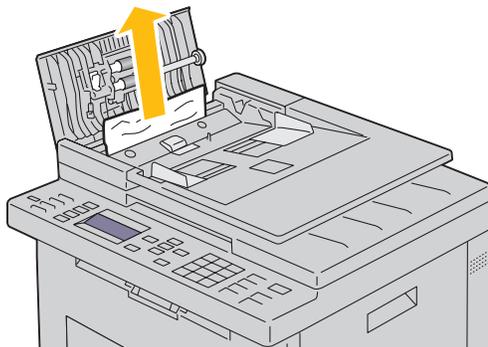
⚠ WARNING: To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

✍ NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

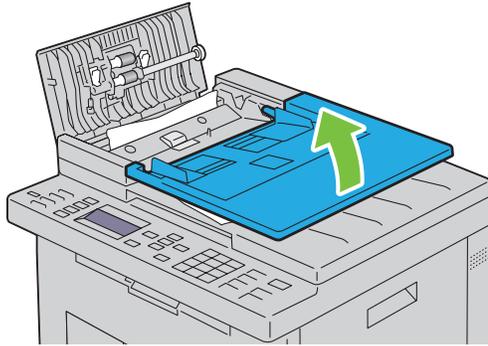
- 1 Open the ADF cover.



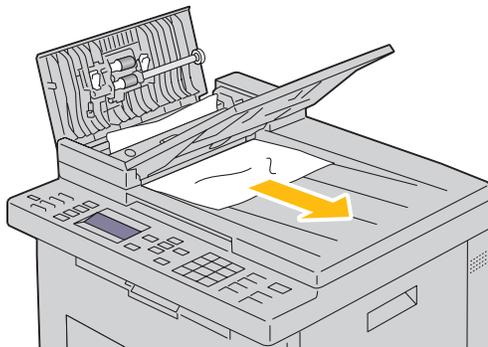
- 2 Remove the jammed document by carefully pulling it in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.



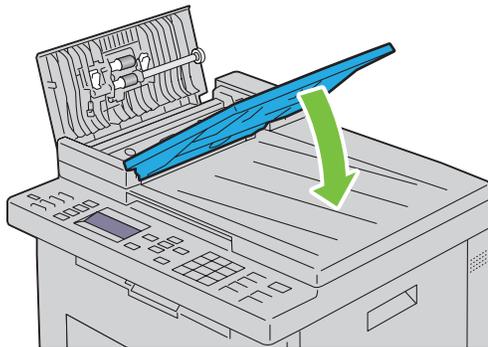
3 If you find it difficult to pull the document, open the document feeder tray.



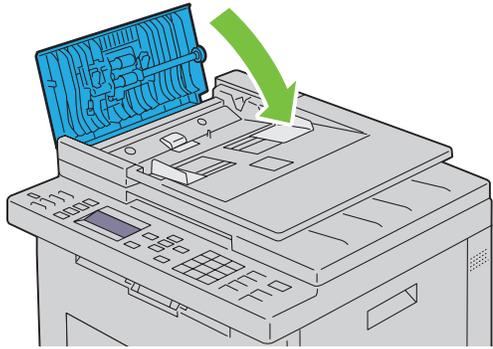
4 Remove the jammed document from the document output tray.



5 Close the document feeder tray.

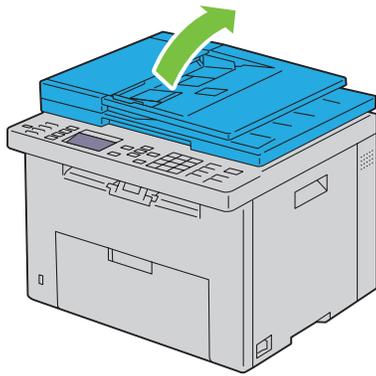


- 6 Close the ADF cover, and then load the documents back into the ADF.

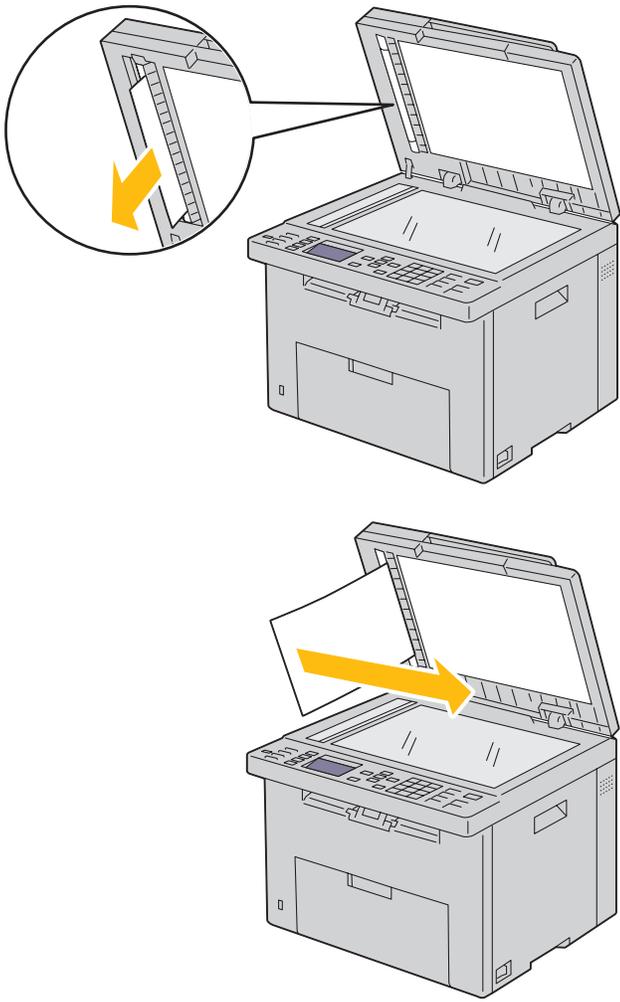


 **NOTE:** Ensure that you adjust the document guides before printing a Legal-size document.

- 7 If you cannot remove the jammed document from the document output tray or cannot find any jammed document there, open the document output tray.



8 Remove the document from the ADF feed roller or the feed area by carefully pulling the document in the direction of the arrow shown in the following illustration.

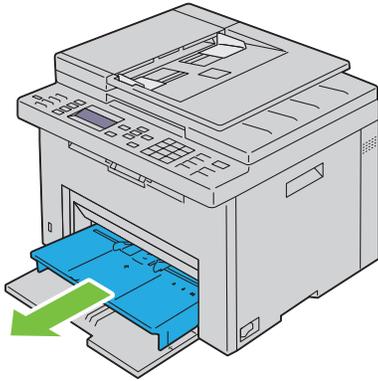


Clearing Paper Jams From the Front of the Printer

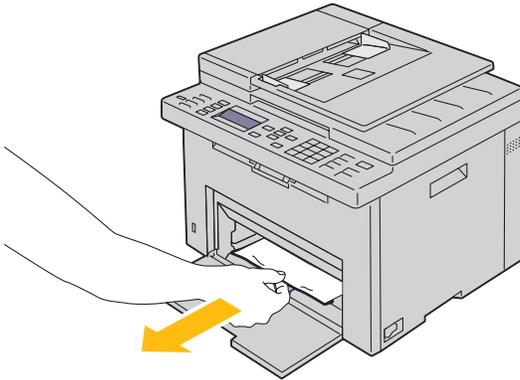
 **WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.

 **NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

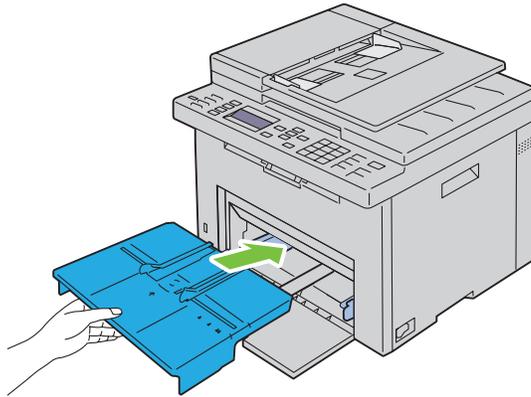
- 1 Pull the PSI out.



- 2 Remove any jammed paper from the front of the printer.



- 3 Replace the PSI in the printer.



⚠ WARNING: When putting the PSI back into the printer, do not use excessive force. Doing so could damage the PSI or the inside of the printer.

- 4 Press the ✓ (Set) button.

Clearing Paper Jams From the Back of the Printer

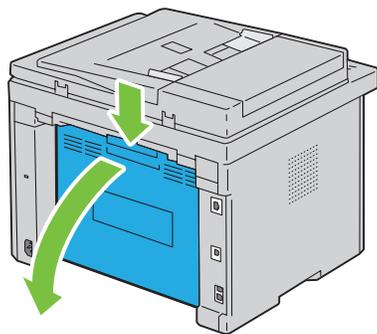
⚠ WARNING: Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.

⚠ WARNING: To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.

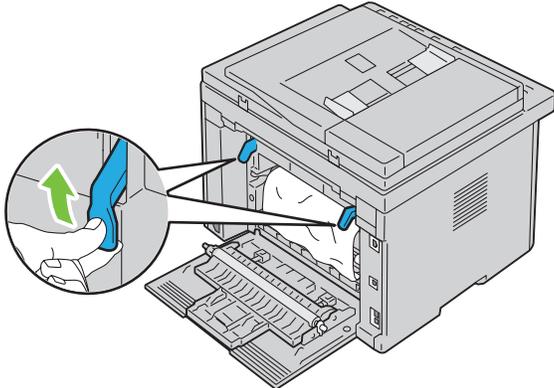
⚠ WARNING: To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.

✍ NOTE: To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.

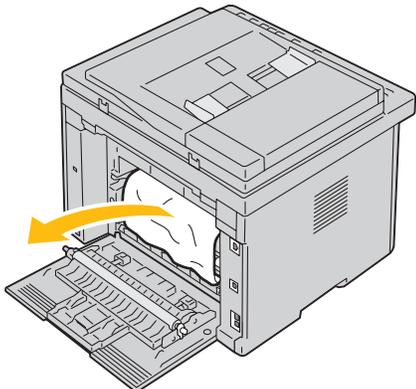
- 1 Push the rear cover release handle and open the rear cover.



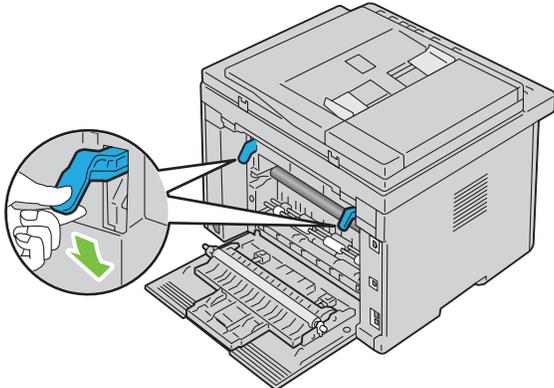
2 Lift up the levers.



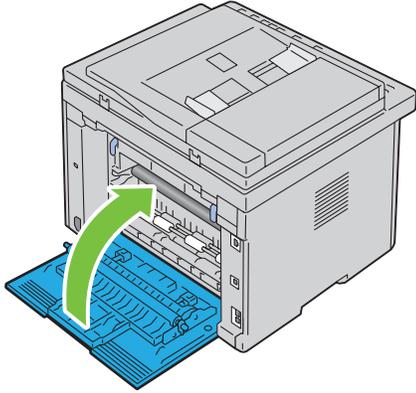
3 Remove any jammed paper from the back of the printer.



4 Lower the levers to their original position.

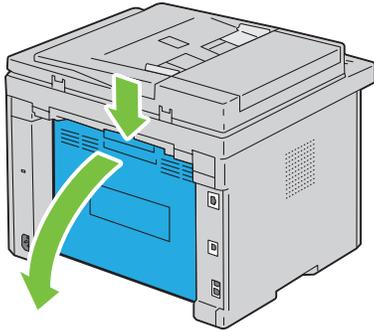


- 5 Close the rear cover.

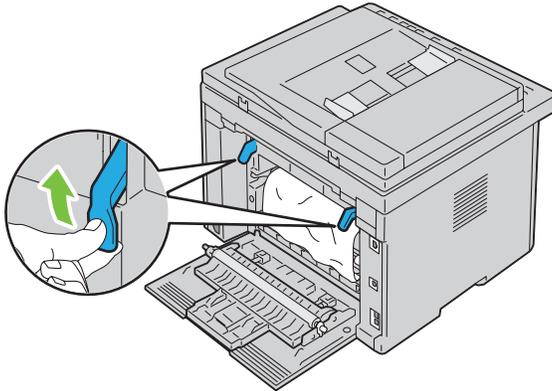


Clearing Paper Jams From the Output Tray

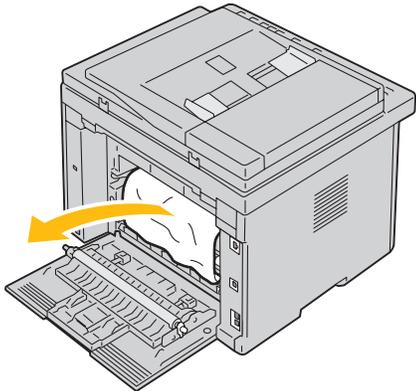
- WARNING:** Before performing any of the following procedures, read and follow the safety instructions in the *Important Information*.
 - WARNING:** To prevent electric shock, always turn off the printer and disconnect the power cable from the grounded outlet before performing maintenance.
 - WARNING:** To avoid burns, do not clear paper jams immediately after printing. The fusing unit becomes extremely hot during use.
 - NOTE:** To resolve the error displayed on the operator panel, you must clear all print media from the print media path.
- 1 Push the rear cover release handle and open the rear cover.



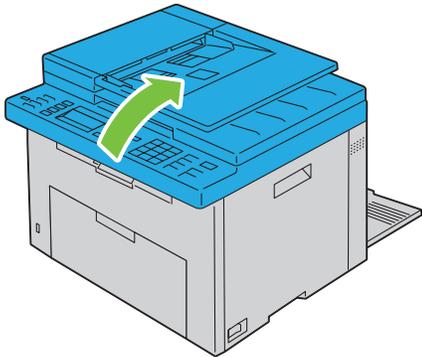
2 Lift up the levers.



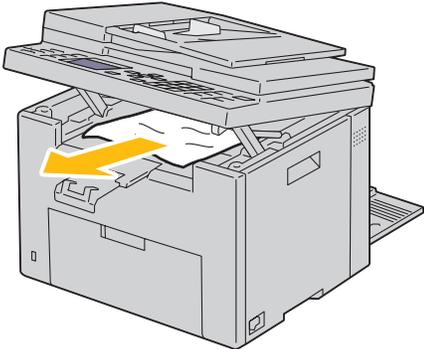
3 Remove any jammed paper from the back of the printer. If no paper is found in the paper path, face the front of the printer and check the output tray.



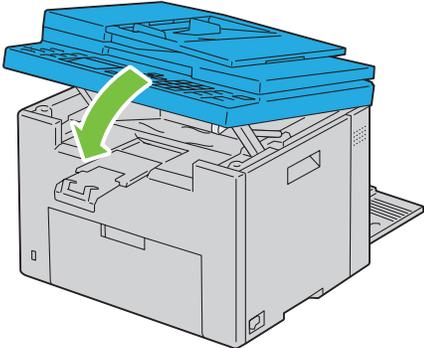
4 Lift and open the scanner unit.



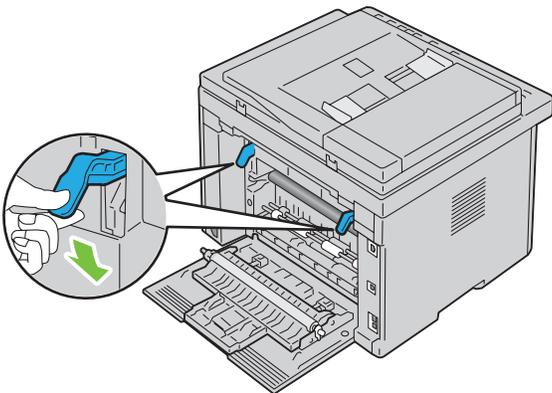
5 Remove any jammed paper out of the output tray.



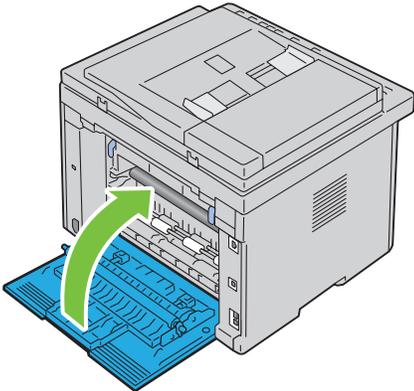
6 Lower and close the scanner unit.



7 Lower the levers to their original position.



8 Close the rear cover.



Troubleshooting

27 Troubleshooting.....	339
-------------------------	-----

Troubleshooting

Basic Printer Problems

Some printer problems can be easy to resolve. If a problem occurs with your printer, check each of the following:

- The power cable is connected to the printer, and to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The printer is turned on.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off at any switch or breaker.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- When your printer is connected to the network with the Ethernet cable, the USB cable is not connected between the printer and the computer.
- When your printer is connected to the computer with the USB cable, the Ethernet cable is not connected between the printer and the network.

If you have checked all of the above and still have a problem, turn off the printer, wait for 10 seconds, and then turn on the printer. This often fixes the problem.

 **NOTE:** If error messages are displayed on the operator panel or on your computer screen, follow the on-screen instructions to resolve the printer problems. For details about error messages and error codes, see "Understanding Printer Messages" on page 295.

Display Problems

Problem	Action
Menu settings changed from the operator panel have no effect.	Settings in the software program, the printer driver, or the printer utilities have precedence over the settings made on the operator panel. Change the menu settings from the printer driver, the printer utilities, or the software program instead of the operator panel.

Printing Problems

 **NOTE:** A Password is required to enter the Admin Menu menu when Panel Lock Set is set to Enable. In this case, enter the password you specified, and press the ✓ (Set) button.

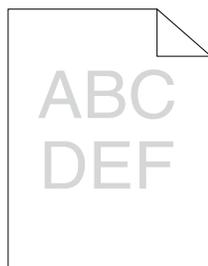
Problem	Action
Job did not print or incorrect characters printed.	Ensure that Ready appears on the operator panel before you send a job to print. Ensure that print media is loaded in the printer. Verify that you are using the correct printer driver. Ensure that you are using the correct Ethernet or USB cable and that it is securely connected to the printer. Verify that the correct print media size is selected. If you are using a print spooler, verify that the spooler has not stalled.

Problem	Action
	<p>Check the interface of your printer from the Admin Menu.</p> <p>Determine the host interface you are using. Print a panel settings page to verify that the current interface settings are correct. Refer to "Printing a Report/List Using the Operator Panel" on page 175 for details on how to print a panel settings page.</p>
Print media misfeeds or multiple feeds occur.	<p>Ensure that the print media you are using meets the specifications for your printer. See "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 208 for more information.</p> <p>Fan the print media before loading it.</p> <p>Ensure that the print media is loaded correctly.</p> <p>Ensure that the width and length guides are adjusted correctly.</p> <p>Ensure that the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI) is securely inserted.</p> <p>Do not overfill the print media sources.</p> <p>Do not force print media into the PSI or the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF) when you load it. Otherwise, it may skew or buckle.</p> <p>Ensure that the print media is not curled.</p> <p>Load the recommended print side correctly for the type of print media you are using. See "Loading Print Media" on page 211 for more information.</p> <p>Turn the print media over or around and try printing again to see if feeding improves.</p> <p>Do not mix print media types.</p> <p>Do not mix reams of print media.</p> <p>Remove the top and bottom curled sheets of a ream before loading the print media.</p> <p>Load a print media source only when it is empty.</p>
The envelope is creased after printing.	<p>Ensure that the envelope is loaded as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 216 or "Loading an Envelope in the Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI)" on page 221.</p>
Page breaks in unexpected places.	<p>Increase the setting for Time-Out in the Printer Settings menu in the Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool.</p>
Print media does not stack neatly in the output tray.	<p>Turn the print media stack over in the PSI and MPF.</p>
Printer does not duplex pages.	<p>Select Flip on Short Edge or Flip on Long Edge from the Duplex menu on the Paper/Output tab in the printer driver.</p>

Print Quality Problems

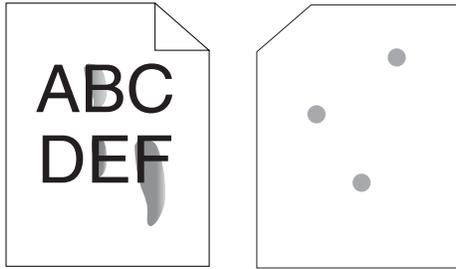
 **NOTE:** In this section, some procedures that use the **Tool Box** can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 163 and "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool" on page 97.

The output is too light



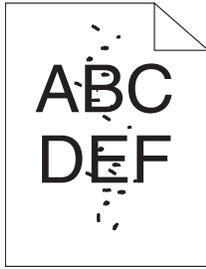
Action	Yes	No
<p>1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Check the toner level in the Status tab in the Status Monitor. b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Verify that the print media is not damp and the correct print media is used. See "Supported Paper Types" on page 209. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Verify that the Paper Type setting in the printer driver matches the print media you loaded.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the printer driver, check the Paper Type setting. b Load dry (not damp) and corrected print media, and then click Print Test Page in Printer properties of the printer driver. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>4 Disable the Toner Saving Mode in the printer driver.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a On the Graphics tab in Printing Preferences of the printer driver, ensure that the Toner Saving Mode check box is not selected. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Toner smears or print comes off/Stain on back side



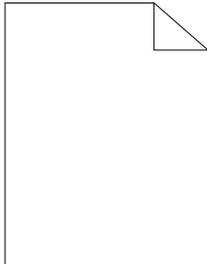
Action	Yes	No
<p>1 The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the Paper Type setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.</p> <p>a On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the printer driver, change the Paper Type setting.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Types" on page 209. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Adjust the fusing unit temperature.</p> <p>a Launch the Tool Box, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab.</p> <p>b Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media.</p> <p>c Click Apply New Settings.</p> <p>d Click close box to exit Tool Box.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Random spots/Blurred images



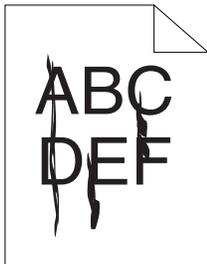
Action	Yes	No
1 Ensure that the toner cartridges are installed correctly. See "Installing a Toner Cartridge" on page 312. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 If you use non-Dell brand toner cartridges, install Dell brand toner cartridges. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
3 Clean up the fusing unit. a Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper. b Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

The entire output is blank



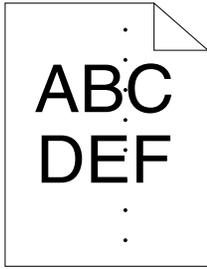
If this trouble comes out, contact Dell.

Streaks appear on the output



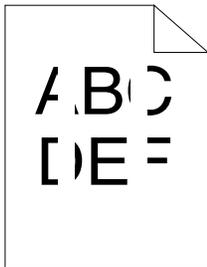
If this trouble comes out, contact Dell.

Pitched color dots



If this trouble comes out, contact Dell.

Vertical blanks

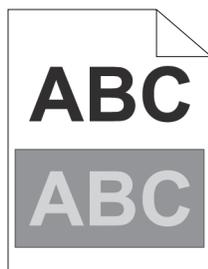


Action	Yes	No
1 Clean inside the printer and performing test print. a Clean inside the printer by using the cleaning rod. See "Cleaning Inside the Printer" on page 313. b Click Print Test Page in Printer properties of the printer driver. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Mottle

Action	Yes	No
1 Adjust the transfer bias. a Launch the Tool Box , click Adjust Transfer Roller on the Printer Maintenance tab. b Adjust the setting for the type of print media being used. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Ghosting



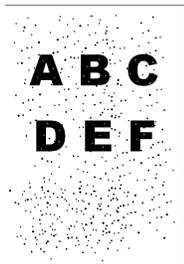
Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Adjust the transfer bias.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Launch the Tool Box, and click Chart Print on the Diagnosis tab. b Click Ghost Configuration Chart. The ghost configuration chart is printed. c Launch the Tool Box, and click Transfer Roller Refresh Mode on the Printer Maintenance tab. d Check the check box next to On, and then click Apply New Settings. e Click Chart Print on the Diagnosis tab. f Click Ghost Configuration Chart. The ghost configuration chart is printed. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 The print media surface may be uneven. Try changing the Paper Type setting in the printer driver. For example, change the plain paper to thick.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a On the Paper/Output tab in Printing Preferences of the printer driver, change the Paper Type setting. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Adjust the fusing unit temperature.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Launch the Tool Box, and click Adjust Fusing Unit on the Printer Maintenance tab. b Adjust the fixing temperature by turning up the value for your printing media. c Click Apply New Settings. d Click close box to exit Tool Box. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
<p>4 If you use non-recommended print media, use the print media recommended for the printer.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Fog



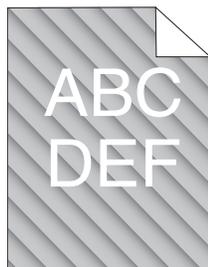
Action	Yes	No
1 Is the whole page printed light?	Contact Dell.	Go to action 2.
2 Start Clean Developer . a Launch the Tool Box , and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab. b Click Start . Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Bead-Carry-Out (BCO)



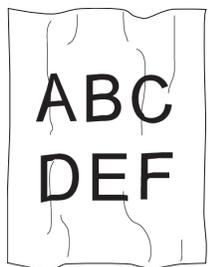
Action	Yes	No
1 If the printer is installed in a high altitude location, set the altitude of the location. a Launch the Tool Box , and click Adjust Altitude on the Printer Maintenance tab. b Select the value close to the altitude of the location where the printer is installed. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Auger mark



Action	Yes	No
1 The toner cartridges may be low or need to be replaced. Confirm the amount of toner in each toner cartridge. a Check the toner level in the Status tab in the Status Monitor. b Replace the toner cartridges as necessary. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Start Clean Developer . a Launch the Tool Box , and click Clean Developer on the Diagnosis tab. b Click Start . Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

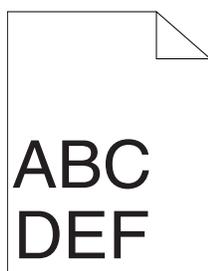
Wrinkled/Stained paper



Action	Yes	No
1 Verify that the correct print media is being used. See "Supported Paper Sizes" on page 208 and "Print Media Guidelines" on page 203. If not, use the print media recommended for the printer. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	If printing on an envelope, go to action 2. If printing on print media other than envelopes, contact Dell.
2 Check the crease. Is the crease within 30 mm of the four edges of the envelope?	This type of crease is considered normal. Your printer is not at fault.	If the envelope is 220 mm or longer (C5 or Envelope #10), go to action 3a. If the envelope is shorter than 220 mm (Monarch or DL), go to action 3b.

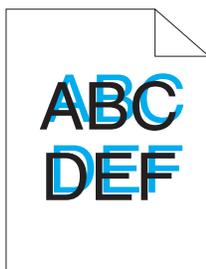
Action	Yes	No
3a Does the envelope have a flap on the long edge?	The envelope is Envelope #10. Go to action 4b.	The envelope is C5. Go to action 4a.
3b Load the envelope long edge feed in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. For details, see "When Loading Envelope #10, DL, or Monarch" on page 216. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4b.
4a Load the envelope in the MPF with the flap open and facing up. For details, see "When Loading C5" on page 217. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.
4b Use a different size envelope. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

The top margins is incorrect



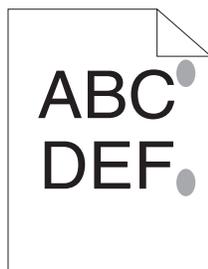
Action	Yes	No
1 Ensure that the margins are set correctly on the application being used. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Color registration is out of alignment



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Execute auto color registration adjustment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Launch the Tool Box, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. b Clear the On check box for Auto Registration Adjustment. c Click Start next to Auto Correct. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
<p>2 Clean the CTD sensor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Clean the CTD sensor. See "Cleaning the Color Toner Density (CTD) Sensor" on page 316. b Launch the Tool Box, and click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. c Clear the On check box for Auto Registration Adjustment. d Click Start next to Auto Correct. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3.
<p>3 Print the color registration chart and manually correct the color registration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a Click Registration Adjustment on the Printer Maintenance tab. b Clear the On check box for Auto Registration Adjustment. c Click Start next to Print Color Regi Chart. The color registration chart is printed. d Select the value with the straight line. See "Adjusting Color Registration" on page 317 for details. e Click Apply New Settings. f Click Start next to Print Color Regi Chart to print the color registration chart again. g Adjust the values for every color until the lines at 0 are the straightest. <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Protrudent / Bumpy paper



Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Clean up the fusing unit.</p> <p>a Load one sheet of paper on the MPF, and then print a solid image all over paper.</p> <p>b Load the printed sheet with the side to be printed on facing down, and then print a blank sheet of paper.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Jam

 **NOTE:** In this section, some procedures that use the **Tool Box** can also be performed using the operator panel or **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**. For information on how to use the operator panel and **Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool**, see "Understanding the Printer Menus" on page 163 and "Dell™ Printer Configuration Web Tool" on page 97.

Misfeed jam

Action	Yes	No
<p>1 Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that papers are properly inserted on the MPF.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	<p>Proceed to the action corresponding to the type of the print media being used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thick - 2a • Thin - 2b • Envelope - 2c <p>If performing manual duplex printing, go to action 2d.</p> <p>If using paper other than the above or if not performing duplex printing, go to action 2e.</p>
<p>2a Use thick paper that is 216 gsm or less.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
<p>2b Use thin paper that is 60 gsm or more.</p> <p>Is the problem recovered?</p>	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.

Action	Yes	No
2c Ensure that the envelope is properly loaded in the MPF as instructed in "Loading an Envelope in the Multipurpose Feeder (MPF)" on page 216. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
2d Ensure that the print media is not curled. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
2e Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3c.	Go to action 3a.
3a Fan the print media. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3c. If you are performing manual duplex printing or if using an envelope, contact Dell.
3b If the envelope is deformed, correct it or use another envelope. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3a.
3c Turn over the print media. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 4.
4 Use print media that is not damp. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Multi-feed jam

Action	Yes	No
1 Remove the paper from the PSI, and then ensure that papers are inserted properly in the MPF. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 2.
2 Is the print media damp?	Go to action 3a.	Go to action 3b.
3a Use print media that is not damp. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Go to action 3b.
3b Fan the print media. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

A document jam occurs in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) if scanning of multiple-sheet document is cancelled while scanning is in progress.

Action	Yes	No
1 Clear the jam. See "Clearing Paper Jams From the ADF" on page 325. Is the problem recovered?	The task is complete.	Contact Dell.

Copy Problem

Problem	Action
A document loaded in the ADF cannot be copied.	Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.

Fax Problems

Problem	Action
The printer is not working, there is no display and the buttons are not working.	Unplug the power cord and plug it in again. Ensure that there is power to the electrical receptacle.
No dial tone sounds.	Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 43. Check that the phone socket in the wall is working by plugging in another phone.
The numbers stored in the memory do not dial correctly.	Ensure that the numbers are stored in the memory correctly. Print a Address Book list.
The document does not feed into the printer.	Ensure that the document is not wrinkled and you are putting it in correctly. Check that the document is of the right size, not too thick or thin. Ensure that the ADF cover is firmly closed.
Faxes are not received automatically.	The FAX mode should be selected. Ensure that there is paper in the PSI or MPF. Check to see if the display shows Memory Full. Check the Junk Fax Setup setting.
The printer does not send faxes.	Sending should show up on the display. Check the other fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax.
The incoming fax has blank spaces or is received in poor-quality.	The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty. A noisy phone line can cause line errors. Check your printer by making a copy. The toner cartridge may be empty. Replace the toner cartridge. For details, see "Replacing Toner Cartridges" on page 310.
Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched.	The fax machine sending you the fax had a temporary document jam.
There are lines on the documents you send.	Check your scan glass for marks and clean it. See "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 320.
The printer dials a number, but the connection with another fax machine fails.	The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask her/him to sort out the problem.
Documents are not stored in the memory.	There may not be enough memory to store the document. If the display shows a Memory Full message, delete any documents you no longer need from the memory and then restore the document, or wait for the job in progress (e.g., a fax transmission or reception) to complete.

Problem	Action
Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top.	You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. See "Print Media Guidelines" on page 203.
The printer will not send or receive faxes.	Ensure that the country code is set correctly under  (Menu) → System → Admin Menu → Fax Settings → Country. Check that the phone line is connected properly. See "Connecting the Telephone Line" on page 43.
An error often occurs during a fax transmission or reception.	Reduce the modem speed under  (Menu) → System → Admin Menu → Fax Settings → Modem Speed.

Scanning Problems

Problem	Action
The scanner does not work.	Ensure that you place the document to be scanned face down from the document glass, or face up in the ADF. There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the preview function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate. Check that the Ethernet or USB cable is connected properly. Ensure that the Ethernet or USB cable is not defective. Switch the cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the cable. Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port.
The printer scans very slowly.	Graphics are scanned more slowly than text when using the Scan to E-mail or Scan to Network feature. Communication speed becomes slow in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image. Scanning images at a high resolution takes more time than scanning at a low resolution.
Document misfeeds or multiple feeds occur in the ADF.	Ensure that the document's paper type meets the specifications for the printer. See "Supported Paper Types" on page 209 for more information. Check whether the document is properly loaded in the ADF. Ensure that the document guides are adjusted properly. Ensure that the number of document sheets do not exceed the maximum capacity of the ADF. Ensure that the document is not curled. Fan the document well before loading it in the ADF.
Vertical stripes appear on the output when scanned using the ADF.	Clean the ADF glass. See "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 320.
A smear appears at the same location on the output when scanned using the document glass.	Clean the document glass. See "Cleaning the Scanner" on page 320.
Images are skewed.	Ensure that the document is loaded straight in the ADF or on the document glass.
Diagonal lines appear jagged when scanned using the ADF.	If the document uses thick media, try scanning it from the document glass.

Problem	Action
The printer does not properly transfer scan data to a specified destination via the Scan to E-mail or Scan to Network feature.	<p>Check if the following settings have been set correctly on the Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool.</p> <p>Scan to Network</p> <p>Check the following settings under Address Book → Server Address:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server Address • Share Name • Server Path • Login Name • Login Password <p>Scan to E-mail</p> <p>Check the following setting under Address Book → Fax/E-Mail:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • E-Mail Address
Cannot scan using Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) on a Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 computer.	<p>Enable WIA on the computer.</p> <p>To enable WIA:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Services. 2 Right-click Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), and then click Start.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2008 or Windows Server 2008 R2 computer.	<p>Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.</p> <p>To install Desktop Experience:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Start, point to Administrative Tools, and then click Server Manager. 2 Under Features Summary, click Add Features. 3 Select the Desktop Experience check box, click Next, and then click Install. 4 Restart the computer.
Cannot scan using TWAIN or WIA on a Windows Server 2012 computer.	<p>Install the Desktop Experience feature on the computer.</p> <p>To install Desktop Experience:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Click Server Manager from the Start screen. The Server Manager screen appears. 2 Under Manage, click Add Roles and Features. Add Roles and Features Wizard appears. 3 Click Next to skip the Before you begin page. 4 Ensure that Role-based or feature-based installation is selected, and then click Next. 5 Ensure that Select a server from the server pool is selected, select the server under Server Pool, and then click Next. 6 Click Next to skip the Select server roles page. 7 Select the Desktop Experience check box under User Interfaces and Infrastructure, and then click Next. 8 Click Confirmation from the list on the left. 9 Select the Restart the destination server automatically if required check box, and then click Install. 10 Restart the computer.

Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems

Problem	Action
Unable to retrieve the Address Book data from the printer on the Address Book Editor .	<p>Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the Ethernet or USB cable.</p> <p>Ensure that the printer's power is on.</p> <p>Ensure that the printer driver is installed on your computer. (The Address Book Editor retrieves the Address Book data via the printer driver.)</p>
The TWAIN driver cannot connect to the printer.	<p>Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the Ethernet or USB cable.</p> <p>Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.</p> <p>If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.</p>
The scanner driver has not been registered on your computer and cannot be accessed from ScanButton Manager .	Install the scanner driver. If the driver is installed, uninstall it and then reinstall it.
Failed to scan your document on the printer via ScanButton Manager .	<p>Ensure that your computer and the printer is properly connected with the USB cable.</p> <p>Check whether the printer is on. If the printer is on, reboot it by turning the power switch off and then on again.</p> <p>If a scan application is running, close the application once, restart the application, and then try scanning again.</p>
Failed to create an image file via ScanButton Manager .	<p>Ensure that there is sufficient space in your hard disk.</p> <p>Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.</p>
Failed to initialize ScanButton Manager .	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
Failed to execute ScanButton Manager .	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.
An unexpected error occurred on ScanButton Manager .	Uninstall ScanButton Manager on your computer and then reinstall it.

Wireless Problems (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)

Problem	Action
Cannot setup wireless connection.	Ensure that the Ethernet and USB cable are disconnected from the printer. Ensure that Wi-Fi is set to On. See "Wi-Fi (Dell C1765nfw Color Multifunction Printer only)" on page 180. Try disabling the firewall on your computer. The firewall on your computer may be blocking communication with your printer.
Cannot setup wireless connection with WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup®).	Ensure that the security setting of the wireless LAN access point or router is WPA or WPA2. (WEP is not supported on WPS.)
Cannot setup wireless connection with the WPS-PBC (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Push Button Configuration).	Press the WPS button on the wireless LAN access point or router within 2 minutes after starting the WPS operation on the printer. For details about the wireless LAN access point or router, refer to the manual supplied with the wireless LAN access point or router.
Cannot setup wireless connection with WPS-PIN (Wi-Fi Protected Setup-Personal Identification Number).	Check if the PIN you have entered on the computer is correct.

Other Problems

Problem	Action
Condensation has occurred inside the printer.	This usually occurs within several hours after you heat the room in winter. This also occurs when the printer is operating in a location where relative humidity reaches 85% or more. Adjust the humidity or relocate the printer to an appropriate environment.
No file is displayed on the operator panel when you are selecting a file for Printing from USB Memory feature.	Confirm that there are files with the supported file formats (PDF, TIFF, or JPEG) in the USB storage device. If the target file is in a deep hierarchy in the USB storage device, move the file to the root directory in the USB storage device with your computer. Shorten the target file name in the USB storage device with your computer, and try printing again.

Contacting Service

When you call for printer service, be prepared to describe the problem you are experiencing or the error message on the display.

You need to know the model of your printer type and serial number. See the label located inside the side door of your printer.

Appendix

Appendix..... 359

Index..... 365

Appendix

Dell Technical Support Policy

Technician-assisted technical support requires the cooperation and participation of the customer in the troubleshooting process and provides for restoration of the operating system, software program and hardware drivers to the original default configuration as shipped from Dell, as well as the verification of appropriate functionality of the printer and all Dell-installed hardware. In addition to this technician assisted technical support, online technical support is available at Dell Support. Additional technical support options may be available for purchase.

Dell provides limited technical support for the printer and any Dell-installed software and peripherals. Support for third-party software and peripherals is provided by the original manufacturer, including those purchased and/or installed through Software & Peripherals (DellWare), ReadyWare, and Custom Factory Integration (CFI/DellPlus).

Online Services

You can learn about Dell products and services on the following websites:

www.dell.com

www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)

www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)

www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

www.dell.ca (Canada only)

You can access Dell Support through the following websites and e-mail addresses:

- Dell Support websites
support.dell.com
support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)
- Dell Support e-mail addresses
mobile_support@us.dell.com
support@us.dell.com
la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)
apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)
- Dell Marketing and Sales e-mail addresses
apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)
sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)
- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)
ftp.dell.com
Log in as user: `anonymous`, and use your e-mail address as your password.

Warranty and Return Policy

Dell Computer Corporation ("Dell") manufactures its hardware products from parts and components that are new or equivalent to new in accordance with industry-standard practices. For information about the Dell warranty for your printer, see support.dell.com.

Recycling Information

It is recommended that customers dispose of their used computer hardware, monitors, printers, and other peripherals in an environmentally sound manner. Potential methods include reuse of parts or whole products and recycling of products, components, and/or materials.

For specific information on Dell's worldwide recycling programs, see www.dell.com/recyclingworldwide.

Contacting Dell

You can access Dell Support at support.dell.com. Select your region on the WELCOME TO DELL SUPPORT page, and fill in the requested details to access help tools and information.

You can contact Dell electronically using the following addresses:

- World Wide Web

www.dell.com

www.dell.com/ap (Asian/Pacific countries only)

www.dell.com/jp (Japan only)

www.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

www.dell.com/la (Latin American and Caribbean countries)

www.dell.ca (Canada only)

- Anonymous file transfer protocol (FTP)

[ftp.dell.com](ftp://ftp.dell.com)

Log in as user: anonymous, and use your e-mail address as your password.

- Electronic Support Service

mobile_support@us.dell.com

support@us.dell.com

la-techsupport@dell.com (Latin America and Caribbean countries only)

apsupport@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

support.jp.dell.com (Japan only)

support.euro.dell.com (Europe only)

- Electronic Quote Service

apmarketing@dell.com (Asian/Pacific countries only)

sales_canada@dell.com (Canada only)

New Zealand PTC200 Warnings

General warning

The grant of a Telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of Telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services Warnings taken from Specification text

2.11.1 Compliance testing (6) & (7) (Functional tests)

"This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

4.5.1 Off-hook line impedance

(4) "This equipment does not fully meet Telecom's impedance requirements. Performance limitations may occur when used in conjunction with some parts of the network. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

4.9.3 Non-voice equipment

(4) "This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Telecom will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances"

5.6.1 General requirements (automatic dialling devices)

(3) "This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service

5.5.5 User instructions

(4) If a charge for local calls is unacceptable, the 'Dial' button should NOT be used for local calls. Only the 7-digits of the local number should be dialled from your telephone. DO NOT dial the area code digit or the '0' prefix

8.1.7 User Instructions (automatic call set-up)

(b) This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom '111' Emergency Service

8.2.1(b) Call answering

When this equipment is set up call answering not within 3~30 sec., the telephone or answering machine shall answer incoming call with 3~30sec.

USA/Canada Wi-Fi Warnings

Class B:

FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION INTERFERENCE STATEMENT

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/ TV technician for help.

CAUTION:

Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the grantee of this device could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Labeling requirements

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

RF exposure warning

This equipment must be installed and operated in accordance with provided instructions and the antenna(s) used for this transmitter must be installed to provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. End-users and installers must be provide with antenna installation instructions and transmitter operating conditions for satisfying RF exposure compliance.

Canada, Industry Canada (IC) Notices

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003 and RSS-210.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure Information

The radiated output power of the Wireless Device is below the Industry Canada (IC) radio frequency exposure limits. The Wireless Device should be used in such a manner such that the potential for human contact during normal operation is minimized.

This device has also been evaluated and shown compliant with the IC RF Exposure limits under mobile exposure conditions. (antennas are greater than 20cm from a person's body).

This device has been certified for use in Canada. Status of the listing in the Industry Canada's REL (Radio Equipment List) can be found at the following web address:

<http://www.ic.gc.ca/app/sitt/reltel/srch/nwRdSrch.do?lang=eng>

Additional Canadian information on RF exposure also can be found at the following web address:

<http://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/eng/sf08792.html>

Canada, avis d'Industry Canada (IC)

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux normes canadiennes ICES-003 et RSS-210.

Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) cet appareil ne doit pas causer d'interférence et (2) cet appareil doit accepter toute interférence, notamment les interférences qui peuvent affecter son fonctionnement.

Informations concernant l'exposition aux fréquences radio (RF)

La puissance de sortie émise par l'appareil de sans fil Dell est inférieure à la limite d'exposition aux fréquences radio d'Industry Canada (IC). Utilisez l'appareil de sans fil Dell de façon à minimiser les contacts humains lors du fonctionnement normal.

Ce périphérique a également été évalué et démontré conforme aux limites d'exposition aux RF d'IC dans des conditions d'exposition à des appareils mobiles (les antennes se situent à moins de 20 cm du corps d'une personne).

Ce périphérique est homologué pour l'utilisation au Canada. Pour consulter l'entrée correspondant à l'appareil dans la liste d'équipement radio (REL - Radio Equipment List) d'Industry Canada rendez-vous sur:

<http://www.ic.gc.ca/app/sitt/reltel/srch/nwRdSrch.do?lang=eng>

Pour des informations supplémentaires concernant l'exposition aux RF au Canada rendez-vous sur :

<http://www.ic.gc.ca/eic/site/smt-gst.nsf/eng/sf08792.html>

Canada IC statement

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. / Le présent matériel est conforme aux spécifications techniques applicables d'Industrie Canada.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices not exceed five. / L'indice d'équivalence de la sonnerie (IES) sert à indiquer le nombre maximal de terminaux qui peuvent être raccordés à une interface téléphonique. La terminaison d'une interface peut consister en une combinaison quelconque de dispositifs, à la seule condition que la somme d'indices d'équivalence de la sonnerie de tous les dispositifs n'excède pas cinq.

Index

Numerics

100Base-TX Full-Duplex, 126
100Base-TX Half-Duplex, 126
10Base-T Full-Duplex, 126
10Base-T Half-Duplex, 126

A

A4, 208
A5, 208
About printer, 25
AC (All Clear) button, 92
Address Book, 100, 102, 112, 133, 175
Address Book Editor, 293
ADF Cover, 26, 28, 324
ADF Glass, 320
Ad-Hoc, 127
Adjust Altitude, 111, 120, 151, 196
Adjust ColorRegi, 194
Adjust Fusing Unit, 111, 119, 149, 193
Adjust Transfer Roller, 111, 119, 149, 193
Adjusting Color Registration, 317
Admin Menu, 176
Administrator Password, 132
Alert Tone, 108, 113, 190
All Tones, 108, 113
Altitude, 302
Ans Machine/Fax, 270
Answer Machine/Fax, 117
Appendix, 359
Apply New Settings, 103
Asset Tag Number, 106
Authenticate Error Trap, 131
Auto Clear Alert Tone, 108, 113

Auto Exposure, 109-110, 115-116, 166, 170, 240
Auto Log Print, 108, 113, 191
Auto Rec Ans/FAX, 181, 270
Auto Rec Fax, 181, 270
Auto Rec TEL/FAX, 181, 270
Auto Receive Answer/Fax, 110, 117
Auto Receive Fax, 110, 117
Auto Receive Tel/Fax, 110, 117
Auto Regi Adjust, 194
Auto Registration Adjustment, 111, 119
Auto Reset, 108, 113, 189
Auto SSID Setup, 40
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF), 25, 28
Automatic Redialing, 275
Avoiding Jam, 229, 323

B

B&W / Color LED, 92
B5, 208
Back button, 92
Backspace button, 92
Base memory, 301
Basic Information, 125
Basic Printer Problems, 339
Blue plug, 43
Bonjour (mDNS), 123, 126, 130

C

C5, 208
Cable, 303
Cancel button, 92
Canceling a job, 230

- Canceling a Job From the Computer Running Windows, 230
- Carbonless copy paper, 204
- CCP, 204
- Chart Print, 161
- Clean Developer, 120, 161, 194
- Clearing Paper Jam, 323
 - From ADF, 325
 - From Back of the Printer, 330
 - From Front of the Printer, 329
 - From Output Tray, 332
- Clock Mode, 268
- Clock Settings, 112, 121
- Coated, 111, 119, 149, 193
- Collated, 109, 115, 163, 236
- Color, 109-110, 115-116, 163, 168, 236
- Color Balance, 166
- Color Button Set, 168
- Color Mode button, 92
- Color Registration Adjustment, 120
- Color Registration Chart, 318
- Color Test Page, 175
- Community Name, 131
- Completed Jobs, 99, 107
- Connecting Printer, 35
- Connection specification, 35, 303
- Connection type, 35, 303
- Conserving supplies, 309
- Contact Dell Support at, 100, 102
- Contact Person, 101
- Contacting Service, 356
- Contacts button, 91
- Control Panel Tone, 108, 113
- Copy button, 91
- Copy Color Balance, 109, 115
- Copy Defaults, 109, 115, 157
- Copy Problem, 352
- Copy Service Lock Set, 109, 114

- Copy Settings, 109, 115
- Country, 111, 118, 271
- Cover, 106
- Covers, 111, 119, 149, 193
- CTD Sensor, 316
- Custom Reduce/Enlarge, 115

D

- Data LED, 91
- Date & Time, 148, 190
- Date Format, 112
- Defaults Settings, 144
- Delayed Start, 110, 116, 173
- Dell Printer Configuration Web Tool, 97
- Dell ScanCenter, 294
- Dell Service Tag Number, 106
- Dell Supplies Management System, 291
- Dell Technical Support Policy, 359
- Demo Page, 112
- Details, 106
- Determining Values, 318
- DHCP, 123, 129
- Dimensions, 301
- Direct Connection, 36
- Direct Connection Setup, 65
- Direct Fax, 276
- Discard Size, 111, 118, 186, 271
- Display Popup, 112
- Display Problems, 339
- DL, 208
- DL LEF, 208
- DNS, 123, 129
- Document Feeder Tray, 25, 28
- Document Glass, 28, 320
- Document Guides, 28
- Document Output Tray, 25
- Document Size, 109-110, 115-116, 165, 169, 238

Driver, 21
DRPD, 117, 270
DRPD Pattern, 111, 118, 185, 270

E

ECM, 111, 118, 186, 271
Edit From Field, 198
E-Mail Alert, 100, 102, 126, 129, 179
E-Mail Alert Settings, 124, 130
E-Mail Alert Setup, 97
E-mail Alert Setup Page, 124
E-Mail Default Setup, 137
E-Mail Group, 136
E-Mail Server Settings, 129
Emulations, 301
Encryption, 122, 127
Entering Values, 319
Envelope, 111, 119, 149-150, 193-194, 206
Envelope #10, 208
Environment, 302
Environment Sensor Info, 161
Environment settings of your web browser, 97
Error History, 112, 175
Ethernet, 122, 126, 176, 303
Ethernet Connection, 36
Ethernet Port, 26, 35
EWS, 154, 180
EWS Settings, 125
Executive, 208
Express Code, 192

F

F/W Version, 192
Fault Time-Out, 189
Fax, 117
Fax Activity, 111, 118, 175, 187, 271

Fax Broadcast, 111, 118, 187, 271
Fax button, 91
Fax Cover Page, 111, 118, 184, 270
Fax Defaults, 110, 116, 156
Fax Forward Number, 111, 118
Fax Fwd Number, 186, 271
FAX Group, 135
Fax Group, 135
Fax Header, 110, 117, 184, 270
Fax Header Name, 110, 117, 184, 270
Fax Number, 111, 118, 184, 270
Fax Problems, 352
Fax Protocol, 111, 118
Fax Service Lock Set, 109, 114
Fax Settings, 110, 117, 145, 159, 181
FAX Speed Dial, 135
Fax Transmit, 111, 118, 271
File Format, 110, 116, 168
Finding Information, 21
Firmware Version, 107
Folio, 208
Forward Settings, 185, 271
Front Cover, 25, 324
Front USB Port, 25
FTP Client, 123
Function Enabled, 114, 197
Fusing Unit, 324

G

Gateway Address, 123, 128
Group Dial, 176
Group Dialing, 283

H

Host I/E, 107
Host Name, 107, 123, 128

How to set up, 22
How to use, 21
HTTP, 123, 129

I

ID, 107
Identifying Print Media and Specifications, 208
Image Compression, 110, 116, 171
Important Information, 21
Impression Number, 107
Infrastructure, 127
Initial Settings, 47
Initialize NIC NVM and restart printer, 132
Initialize NVM, 180, 195
Installing a Toner Cartridge, 312
Installing Printer Drivers, 65, 85
Interfaces, 301
IP Address, 53, 99, 101, 123, 128
IP address, 123
IP Address Mode, 123, 128
IP Filter, 180
IP Filter (IPv4), 133
IP Mode, 123, 128
IP Settings, 55
IPv4, 123, 128-129, 131
IPv6, 123, 128-129, 131

J

Jam, 350
Job History, 112, 175
Job List, 99, 107
Job Name, 107
Job Status, 107
Job Submitted Time, 107
Job Time-Out, 108, 113, 189
Job Tone, 108, 113

Job Type, 107
Junk Fax Setup, 110, 117, 160, 183, 270

K

Kensington lock, 29

L

Label, 111, 119, 149-150, 193-194, 207
LCD, 91
LCD Panel, 92
Left frame, 102
Legal, 208
Length Guide, 25
Letter, 208
Levers, 26, 324
Lighter/Darker, 109-110, 115-116, 165, 169, 172, 239, 274
Line Monitor, 110, 117, 182, 270
Line Type, 110, 117, 182, 270
Link Channel, 122, 127
Link Quality, 122, 127
Liquid crystal display, 91
Loading Envelope, 216, 221
Loading Letterhead, 205, 218, 223
Loading Paper, 57
Loading Print Media, 211
Loading Print Media in Multipurpose Feeder (MPF), 57, 211
Loading Print Media in Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI), 62, 219
Location, 101, 106
Low Toner Alert Msg, 191
LPD, 123, 126, 129, 179

M

MAC Address, 122, 127

Maintenance, 309
Manual Duplex Printing, 224
Manual SSID Setup, 41
Margin Left/Right, 109-110, 115-116, 167, 170, 241
Margin Middle, 109-110, 115-116, 167, 171, 242
Margin Top/Bottom, 109-110, 115-116, 167, 170, 241
Max E-Mail Size, 110, 116, 171
Memory, 301
Memory Capacity, 107
Menu button, 92
Menu Items, 104
Menu Settings, 108, 140
MIB Compatibility, 302
Mixed Mode PSK, 127
mm/inch, 108, 113, 191
Modem Speed, 111, 118, 187, 271
Monarch, 208
Monarch LEF, 208
MPF Extension, 25
Multiple Up, 309
Multiple-Up, 109, 115, 167, 240
Multipurpose Feeder (MPF), 25, 324

N

NCR, 204
Network, 176
Network Connection Setup, 68
Network Firmware Version, 107
Network Type, 122, 127
New Password, 114
No carbon required, 204
No. of Sheets, 107
Non-Dell Toner, 112, 121, 151, 196
Number of Copies, 235
Numeric keypad, 92, 94

O

OCR, 204
One Touch Dial button, 91
Online Help, 100, 102
Online Services, 359
Operating System Compatibility, 301
Operation, 302
Operator Panel, 25, 91
 Button, 91
Optical character recognition, 204
Order Supplies, 30
Order Supplies at, 100, 102
Original Type, 109, 115, 165, 238, 273
OS, 301
Out of Paper Tone, 108, 113
Output Result, 107
Output Tray, 106
Output Tray Extension, 226
Owner, 107

P

Panel Alert Tone, 108, 113
Panel Language, 95, 108, 113, 199
Panel Lock, 197, 200
Panel Lock Set, 109
Panel Settings, 112, 174
Panel Settings Page, 95
Paper, 203
 Characteristics, 203
 Curl, 203
 Fiber Content, 204
 Grain Direction, 203
 Moisture Content, 203
 Smoothness, 203
 Weight, 203
Paper Chute, 26
Paper Density, 111, 118, 148, 192
Paper Feed Roller, 26

Paper jam location, 324
 Paper Size, 208
 Paper Trays, 106
 Paper Type, 209
 Paper Used, 133
 Paper Width Guides, 25
 Parts name, 25
 PDL, 301
 Peer-to-Peer, 82
 Phone Book, 176
 Phone Connector, 26, 35, 43, 303
 Plain, 111, 119, 149, 193
 Plain Thick, 111, 119, 149, 193
 Point and Print, 80
 Port Settings, 126
 Port Status, 123, 126
 Port9100, 123, 126, 129, 179
 Power Connector, 26
 Power On Wizard, 192
 Power Saver Timer, 95
 Power Saver Timer - Deep Sleep, 108, 113
 Power Saver Timer - Sleep, 108, 113
 Power Saving Timer, 95, 188
 Power Supply, 301
 Power Switch, 25
 Prefix Dial, 111, 118, 186, 271
 Prefix Dial Num, 186
 Prefix Dial Number, 111, 118, 271
 Premier, 112
 Print Cartridge Level, 106
 Print from USB, 109, 114
 Print Head Cleaning Rod, 25
 Print media, 309
 Print Media Dimensions, 211
 Print Media Guidelines, 203
 Print Quality Guarantee, 302
 Print Quality Problems, 341
 Print Server Reports, 122
 Print Server Settings, 100, 102, 122, 125
 Print Server Setup Page, 122
 Print Volume, 100, 102, 133
 Printer Driver Pre-install Status, 65
 Printer Events, 106
 Printer Information, 100, 102, 106, 140
 Printer Jobs, 99, 102, 107
 Printer Maintenance, 118
 Printer Page Count, 133
 Printer Revision Levels, 107
 Printer Serial Number, 107
 Printer Settings, 99, 102, 108, 113
 Printer Settings Report, 108
 Printer Software, 291
 Printer specification, 301
 Printer Status, 99, 102, 106
 Printer Type, 106
 Printing, 229
 Printing on Letterhead, 205
 Printing Problems, 339
 Printing Speed, 106
 Printing Status Window, 291
 Priority Sheet Inserter (PSI), 25
 Processor Speed, 107
 Product Features, 23
 Protocol, 179
 Protocol Monitor, 175, 271

Q

Quick Launch Utility, 292
 Quick Reference Guide, 21

R

Ready / Error LED, 91
 Rear Cover, 26, 324

Receive Mode, 110, 117, 181, 270
Recommended Paper, 204
Recycled, 111, 119, 149, 193-194
Recycling Information, 360
Re-dial / Pause button, 91
Redial Attempts, 110, 117, 183, 270
Redial Delay, 110, 117, 183, 270
Reduce/Enlarge, 109, 115, 164, 237
Re-enter Password, 114
Refresh, 103
Refresh Mode, 161
Registration Adjustment, 150
Regular, 112
Relative humidity, 302
Remote Rcv Tone, 183, 270
Remote Receive, 110, 117, 183, 270
Remote Receive Tone, 110, 117
Removing the Toner Cartridges, 310
Report Page, 231
Reports, 112, 142
Resend Delay, 110, 117, 183, 270
Reset Defaults, 121, 151
Reset Print Server, 132
Reset Wireless, 179
Resetting Defaults, 162, 201
Resolution, 110, 116, 169, 172, 273
Restore Settings, 103
Return Policy, 360
Right Frame, 103
Ring Tone Volume, 110, 117, 182, 270
Ringer Volume, 269

S

Safety information, 21
Scan button, 92
Scan Defaults, 110, 116, 154
Scan Service Lock Set, 109, 114

Scan To Network, 110, 116, 168
Scan to PC, 132
ScanButton Manager, 293
Scanner Driver/Printer Utility Problems, 355
Scanner Unit, 324
Scanning Problems, 353
Secure Receive, 114, 198
Secure Receive Set, 109, 114
Secure Settings, 109, 114, 197
Security, 132
Security Settings, 127
Security Slot, 26
Select Reorder URL, 112
Selecting Paper, 204
Selecting Preprinted Media and Letterhead, 205
Selecting Pre-Punched Paper, 206
Sending a Fax, 272
Sending a Fax Automatically, 274
Sending a Fax Manually, 275
Sending print job, 229
Sent Fax Forward, 111, 118
Server Address, 137
Service Code, 22
Service Tag, 22, 192
Set Date, 112
Set Password, 100, 102, 132
Set Time, 112
Setting Copy Options, 235
Setting the IP Address, 53
Setting the Printer ID, 267
Setting the Time and Date, 268
Setting Up Printer, 47
Setting Your Country, 267
Setup diagram, 22
Sharpness, 109-110, 115-116, 166, 170, 239
SMB Client, 123
SNMP, 123, 126, 131

SNMP UDP, 179
Software and Documentation disc, 21, 51
Software Download, 109, 114, 198
Speaker Volume, 268
Speed Dial, 176
Speed Dial button, 92
SSID, 122, 127
Start, 92
Start button, 92
Status Messenger, 126
Status Monitor Console, 291
Status of printer supplies, 309
Storage, 302
Storage humidity range, 302
Storing consumables, 310
Storing Print Media, 207, 229, 309
Subnet Mask, 123, 128
Support
 Contacting Dell, 360
System Settings, 108, 112-113, 125, 146, 174
System Settings page, 112

T

TCP/IP, 128
TCP/IP Settings, 123, 128, 143, 152
Telephone, 117, 270
Telephone/Fax, 117, 270
Temperature, 302
TIFF File Format, 116, 171
Time Format, 112
Time Zone, 112
Time-Out, 123, 129
Tone/Pulse, 110, 117, 182, 270
Toner Access Cover, 25
Toner Refresh, 120, 195
Top frame, 101
Transfer Belt, 26

Transfer Roller, 26
Transfer Roller Refresh, 195
Transfer Roller Refresh Mode, 152
Transmit Key, 122
Trap Notification, 131
Tray 1 Custom Size - X, 112
Tray 1 Custom Size - Y, 112
Tray 1 Paper Size, 112
Tray 1 Paper Type, 112
Tray Settings, 100, 102, 112, 138, 143, 153, 173
TWAIN, 247

U

Unacceptable Paper, 204
UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT
 RESTRICTED RIGHTS, 17
USB, 303
USB port, 26, 35
USB Settings
 USB port, 199
USB storage device, 264

W

Wall Jack Connector, 26, 35, 43, 303
Warranty, 360
Warranty information, 21
Web Link Customization, 112, 122, 152
WEP 128 Bit ASCII (13 Bytes), 127
WEP 128 Bit Hex (26 Bytes), 127
WEP 64 Bit ASCII (5 Bytes), 127
WEP 64 Bit Hex (10 Bytes), 127
White Document Cover, 320
White Strip, 320
Wi-Fi, 180
Wi-Fi | WPS button, 38, 92
 Backlight, 93
Windows Image Acquisition (WIA), 248

- Wireless Connection, 37
- Wireless LAN, 122, 127
- Wireless Problems, 356
- Wireless Settings, 122, 127
- Wireless Setup, 177
- Wireless Status, 177
- WPA2-PSK AES, 127
- WPA-PSK TKIP, 127
- WPS, 178
- WPS-PBC, 38-39
- WPS-PIN, 40
- WSD, 76, 123, 126, 129

Y

- Yellow terminator, 44

